Program Product

VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference: LIOCS Volume 1 General Information and Imperative Macros

Program Number 5746-XE9
Release 2



SUMMARY OF AMENDMENTS

This manual contains information previously published in <u>DOS/VSE LIOCS Volume 1, General Information and Imperative Macros Logic</u>, SY33-8559, and <u>VSE/Advanced Functions</u>
<u>Supplement</u>, LD25-0012. Changes reflect support for:

- DASD independence for SAM/DAM files.
- · Reduction of B-transient area contention.

The major impact of this support is in changes to OPEN and CLOSE B-transients and the inclusion in this volume of four B-transient phases previously described in <u>DOS/VSE LIOCS</u> <u>Volume 2, SAM Logic</u>. In addition, disk open and data security message writer B-transients are modified to cause A and D messages to be issued from the SVA so that the LTA is not held in the wait state for the responses. Several new B-transients are supplied to transfer control to and from the LTA and SVA for this purpose.

Additional changes include 3262 printer support, improved label processing, APAR corrections, and miscellaneous editorial corrections.

First Edition (October 1979)

This edition, LY24-5209-0, applies to Release 2 of VSE/Advanced Functions, (Program Number 5746-XE9) and to all subsequent releases until otherwise indicated in new editions or Technical Newsletters. Changes are continually made to the information herein; before using this publication in connection with the operation of IBM systems, consult the latest System/370 and 4300 Processors Bibliography, GC20-0001, for the editions that are applicable and current.

Changes or additions to the text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

It is possible that this material may contain reference to, or information about, IBM products (machines and programs), programming, or services that are not announced in your country. Such references or information must not be construed to mean that IBM intends to announce such IBM products, programming, or services in your country.

Publications are not stocked at the address given below; requests for copies of IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

This document has been provided subject to the terms and conditions of the License Agreement for IBM Program Products.

A form for reader's comments is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, comments may be addressed to IBM Laboratory, Programming Publications Department, Schoenaicher Str. 220, D-7030 Germany. IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation whatsoever. You may, of course, continue to use the information you supply.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1979

This manual is the first in a series of four manuals providing detailed information about the VSE/Advanced Functions Logical IOCS programs. The four manuals are:

<u>Yolume 1: General Information and Imperative Macros</u>, LY24-5209.

<u>Volume 2: SAM, LY24-5210.</u>

Volume 3: DAM and ISAM, LY 24-5211.

Volume 4: SAM for DASD, LY24-5212.

This first volume is mainly intended for persons involved in program maintenance and for systems programmers who are altering the program design. The volume contains general information about Logical IOCS as well as descriptive text and flowcharts about commonly used transients. Included in this manual are:

- The functions of logical IOCS, including a short description of the available access methods.
- The modular-tabular system.
- A short description of the declarative macros.
- Complete description of the imperative macros.
- 5. File initialization and termination.
- A detailed description of the open and close routines.
- A detailed description of DASD file protect routines.
- 8. A detailed description of VTOC Display and Dump routines.
- 9. Charts.

In addition, this volume contains appendixes with information that is either supplementary to LIOCS or is an aid for information retrieval. To the first category belongs the EBCDIC - ASCII conversion tables. To the second category belong the label cross-reference list, error message list, master error message list, and master index.

Volumes 2, 3, and 4 contain information relating to all the logical IOCS components necessary to process the file types described within those books. Exception to this approach is found in those routines

that are either common to more than one access method or independent of file types. These routines, which include the open and close monitor, DASD file protect, and VTOC routines, are documented in this volume.

PREREQUISITE PUBLICATIONS

- IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA 22-7000, in conjunction with
- IBM System/360 Principles of Operation, GA22-6821.
- OS/VS DOS/VSE VM/370 Assembler Language, GC33-4010.
- <u>VSE System Data Management Concepts</u>, GC 24-5209.
- <u>VSE/Advanced</u> <u>Functions</u> <u>Macro User's</u> <u>Guide</u>, SC24-5210.
- <u>VSE/Advanced Functions Macro Reference</u>, SC24-5211.
- <u>YSE/Advanced Functions System Control</u> <u>Statements</u>, SC33-6095.
- <u>VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis</u> <u>Reference: Supervisor</u>, LY33-9091.

RELATED PUBLICATIONS

- VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference: LIOCS Volume 2, SAM, LY24-5210.
- VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis
 Reference: LIOCS Volume 3, DAM and ISAM,
 LY24-5211.
- <u>VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis</u>
 <u>Reference: LIOCS Volume 4, SAM for DASD</u>,
 LY24-5212.
- <u>VSE/Advanced</u> <u>Functions</u> <u>Tape</u> <u>Labels</u>, SC24-5212.
- <u>VSE/Advanced</u> <u>Functions</u> <u>DASD</u> <u>Labels</u>, SC 24-5213.
- VSE/Advanced Functions Messages, SC33-6098.
- <u>System/370 and 4300 Processors</u> <u>Bibliography</u>, GC20-0001.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	Reader Files 42
LOGICAL IOCS	Magnetic Ink Character Recognition
LOGICAL IOCS PROCESSING METHODS 10	Files 42
	Optical Reader Files (Except 3881) . 42
Sequential Access Method (SAM) 10	
Direct Access Method (DAM) 10	Magnetic Tape Files 42
Indexed Sequential Access Method	DASD Files 43
(ISAM)	Diskette Files 43
Virtual Storage Access Method	CLOSE ROUTINES CHARTS 05, 06 43
(VSE/VSAM)	Unit Record Files (Except MICR) 43
Virtual and Basic Telecommunications	MICR (Magnetic Ink Character
Access Methods (ACF/VTAM and	Recognition) Files 43
BTAM-ES)	Magnetic Tape Files 43
Storage Requirements 11	DASD Files 43
MODULAR-TABULAR SYSTEM	Diskette Files 43
DECLARATIVE MACROS	File Labeling 43
DTF (Define the File) Macros 12	Creation of Tape Volume Labels 44
MOD (Module Generation) Macros 15	Standard Tape File Labels 44
TRACK HOLD FUNCTION	Additional File Labels 44
REENTERABLE MODULES	User Header and Trailer Labels on
INTERRELATIONSHIPS OF THE DECLARATIVE	Tape
MACRO INSTRUCTIONS 16	Tapemarks with Standard Tape Labels. 44
IMPERATIVE MACROS	Standard Tape Label Processing 45
IMPERATIVE MACRO EXPANSIONS 19	
CHECK Macro	Unlabeled Tape Files 46
CLOSE Macro	DASD Label Processing 46
CLOSER Macro	Diskette Label Processing 47
CNTRL Macro	Diskette Input Files 47
DISEN Macro	Diskette Output Files 48
DSPLY Macro 23	
ENDFL Macro 23	Common and Special Purpose Logical IOCS
ERET Macro 24	Routines 49
ESETL Macro 24	\$\$BOESTV: Frror Statistics by Tape
FEOV Macro 24	Volume Charts FN-FO 49
FEOVD Macro 25	\$\$BOPEN: Open Monitor Charts AA-AB 49
FREE Macro 25	\$\$BOPEN1: Open Monitor Phase 1
GET Macro 26	Charts AE-AJ 50
LBRET Macro 26	\$\$BOPEN4: DASD DTF DEV Type Update
LITE Macro 28	OPEN Phase Charts HG-HH 51
NOTE Macro 28	\$\$BOPIGN: Open Ignore Charts AL-AM 51
OPEN Macro 29	\$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor, Phase 2
OPENC Macro 29	Charts AN-AQ 51
OPENR Macro 30	Example of the Open Function 52
POINTR Macro	\$\$BOPLBL: Open Monitor Label Space
POINTS Macro	Processor Chart AK 53
POINTW Macro	\$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF Address
PRTOV Macro	Constants Charts AS - AV 55
PUT Macro	\$\$BOPENC: Check Duplicate Device
	Assignments for Logical Units Chart AW
RDLNE Macro	
READ Macro 34	\$\$BENDQB: Enqueue and Dequeue for
RELFASE Macro Dynamic Device	VSE/VSAM Poutines Chart AY 55
Release	\$\$BOPNR2: Relocate DTF Address
RELSE Macro	Constants, Phase 2 Charts BA-BC 56
RESCN Macro 36	\$\$BOPNR3: Relocate DTF Address
SEOV Macro 36	Constants, Phase 3 Charts BE-BF 56
SETDEV Macro 37	MODLOOP (Address Modification)
SETFL Macro	Subroutine Chart BD 56
SETL Macro	<pre>\$\$BOPENS: RPS SVA Initialization</pre>
TRUNC Macro 38	Routine Chart BS 57
WAITF Macro 39	\$\$VOPENT: RPS Phase Loading Routine
WRITE Macro	Charts BT-BU 57
Example of a GET Macro 40	<pre>\$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor, Phase 1</pre>
•	Charts BG-BI 57
File Initialization and Termination 42	\$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor, Phase 2
OPEN Routines Charts 01-04 42	Charts BK-BM
Unit Record and 3881 Optical Mark	\$\$BCLOS3: Close Monitor, Phase 3

Licensed Program - Property of IBM

	Chart BN	58	\$\$BODMSG: Diskette Open Error
	\$\$BCLOS4: Close Monitor, Phase 4		Message Writer Phase 1 Chart GA 64
	Chart BO		\$\$BODMS2: Diskette Open Error
	\$\$BCLLBI: Close Monitor Label Space		Message Writer, Phase 2 Charts
	Processor Chart BJ		GB-GC 65
	\$\$BCLRPS: DASD RPS Common Close		\$\$BODSMO: Diskette Data Security
	Charts BQ-BR	59	Message Writer Chart GD 66
	\$\$BOSDC1: SD Close Input and		\$\$BOVDMP: VTOC Dump Charts FG-FH 66
	Output, Charts CA-CB	60	\$\$BOWDMP: List VTOC Chart FI 66
	\$\$BOSDC2: Close: Free Track		\$\$BOMSG1 Disk Open Error Message
	Function, Chart CC	60	Writer, Phase 1 Chart FJ 67
	\$\$BCSDEV: SD Close, Chart CD		\$\$BOMSG2: Disk Open Error Message
	\$\$BODQUE: Dequeue Extent JIBs,		Writer, Phase 2 Charts FK-FL 68
	Chart CE	61	\$\$BODSMW Data Security Message
	\$\$BRELSE: Device Release Charts		Writer Chart FM 68
	EE-EG	61	
COM	MONLY USED LCGICAL TRANSIENTS		CHARTS
	\$\$BOFLPT: DASD File-Protect Charts		
	FA-FC		APPENDIX A: LABEL CROSS-REFERENCE LIST. 152
	\$\$BODSPV: VTOC Display, Phase 1		
	Chart FD	62	APPENDIX B: MASTER ERROR MESSAGE LIST . 155
	\$\$BCDSPW: VTOC Display, Phase 2		,
	Charts FF-FF	63	APPENDIX C: ASCII CONVERSION TABLES 164
	\$\$BODSPO: Diskette VTOC Display,		
	Chart JA	63	APPENDIX D: MASTER INDEX FOR
	\$\$BOVDMO: Diskette VTOC Dump Chart		VSE/Advanced Functions LIOCS 168
	JB	63	
	\$\$BCWDMO: Diskette List VTOC Chart		INDEX
		c 11	

FIGURES

Figure 1. Example of LIOCS and PIOCS	Independent Extension Work Area 60
Interrelationship 10 Figure 2 . DTF Table Types	Figure 12. VTOC Display of Disk Pack (DSPLYV Response) 63
Figure 3. The Relationship Between	Figure 13. VTOC Display of Diskette
Imperative and Declarative Macros 16	(DSPLYV Response) 64
Figure 4 . logical IOCS Imperative	Figure 14. VTOC Dump of Diskette
Macros and DTFs	(CANCELV Response)65
Figure 5 . Logical IOCS Imperative	Figure 15. VTOC Dump of Disk Pack
Macros and Devices	(CANCELV Response)68
Figure 6 . Example of a GET Macro 41	Figure 16. Message Code for Disk Open
Figure 7. Sample OPEN DTFMT Macro	Error Message Writer (Part 1 of 3)70
Instruction 52	Figure 17. Master Error Message List
Figure 8. Example of Open Function 54	(Part 1 of 8)
Figure 9 . DTFMT Workfile Format 56	Figure 18. ASCII to EBCDIC Conversion
Figure 10. Use of Different DTF Types	(Part 1 of 2)
by \$\$BCLRPS 60	Figure 19. EBCDIC to ASCII Conversion
Figure 11. RPS DTF or DAM DASD Device	(Part 1 of 2)

			•
	Chart 01. Open Monitor	. 71	Chart BG. \$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor,
	Chart 02. Open Monitor		Phase 1 (Part 1 of 3)
	Chart 03. Open Magnetic Tape		Chart BH. \$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor,
	Chart 04. Open ISAM		Phase 1 (Part 2 of 3)
	Chart 05. Close Monitor		Chart BI. \$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor,
	Chart 06. EOF/EOV Routine		Phase 1 (Part 3 of 3)
	Chart 07. Open Diskette, Input		Chart BJ. \$\$BCLLBL: Close Monitor
	Chart 08. Open Diskette, Output		Label Space Processing
	Chart AA. \$\$BOPEN: Open Monitor (Part	. , 0	Chart BK. \$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor,
	1 of 2)	79	Phase 2 (Part 1 of 3)
	Chart AB. \$\$BOPEN: Open Monitor (Part	• 13	Chart BL. \$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor,
		9.0	Phase 2 (Part 2 of 3)
	2 of 2)	. 00	Chart BM. \$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor,
	•	01	•
	(Part 1 of 6)	. 01	Phase 2 (Part 3 of 3)
		0.2	Chart BN. \$\$BCLOS3: Close Monitor,
	(Part 2 of 6)	. 0,2	Phase 3
	Chart AG. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1		Chart BO. \$\$BCLOS4: Close Monitor,
	(Part 3 of 6)	. 83	Phase 4
	Chart AH. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1	0.11	Chart BP. Close Monitor Subroutines114
	(Part 4 of 6)	. 84	Chart BQ. \$\$BCLRPS: DASD RPS Common
	Chart AI. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1		Close
4	(Part 5 of 6)	. 85	Chart BR. \$\$BCLRPS: DASD RPS Common
ı	Chart AJ. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1		Close Restore User's DTF
ı	(Part 6 of 6)		Chart BS. \$\$BOPENS: IOCS and Device
	Chart AK. \$\$BOPLBL: Open Monitor Label		Independent I/O Initialization 117
	Space Processing	. 87	Chart BT. \$\$VOPENT: IOCS and Device
	Chart AL. \$\$BOPIGN: Open Ignore (Part		Independent I/O Initialization (Part 1
	1 of 2)	. 88	of 2)
ł	Chart AM. \$\$BOPIGN: Open Ignore (Part		Chart BU. \$\$VOPENT: IOCS and Device
ı	2 of 2)	. 89	Independent I/O Initialization (Part 2
	Chart AN. \$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor,		of 2)
	Phase 2 (Part 1 of 3)	. 90	Chart CA. \$\$BOSDC1: SD Close Input and
	Chart AP. \$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor,		Output (Part 1 of 2)
	Phase 2 (Part 2 of 3)	. 91	Chart CB. \$\$BOSDC1: SD Close Input and
	Chart AQ. \$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor,		Output (Part 2 of 2)
	Phase 2 (Part 3 of 3)	• 92	Chart CC. \$\$BOSDC2: Close, Free Track
	Chart AS. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF		Function
	Address Constants (Part 1 of 4)	• 93	Chart CD. \$\$BOSDEV: Forced End of
	Chart AT. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF	0.4	Volume for Disk
	Address Constants (Part 2 of 4)	• 94	Chart CE. \$\$BODQUE: Dequeue Extent
	Chart AU. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF	٥.	JIBS
	Address Constants (Part 3 of 4)	• 95	Chart EE. \$\$BRELSE: Dynamic Device
	Chart AV. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF	0.0	Release Transient (Part 1 of 3) 125
	Address Constants (Part 4 of 4)	. 90	Chart EF. \$\$BRELSE: Dynamic Device
	Chart AW. \$\$BOPENC: Check Duplicate	07	Release Transient (Part 2 of 3) 126
	Device Asssignment for Logical Unit . Chart AX. \$\$BENDQB: Enqueue and	. 97	Chart EG. \$\$BRELSE: Dynamic Device Release Transient (Part 3 of 3) 127
	Dequeue for VSE/VSAM Routines	00	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Chart BA. \$\$BOPNR2: Pelocate DTF	• 50	Chart FA. \$\$BOFLPT: DASD File Protect (Part 1 of 3)
	Address Constants, Phase 2 (Part 1 of		Chart FB. \$\$BOFLPT: DASD File Protect
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	aa ´	(Part 2 of 3)
	3)	• 22	,
			Chart FC. \$\$BOFLPT: DASD File Protect
	Address Constants, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 3)	100	(Part 3 of 3)
	Chart BC. \$\$BOPNR2: Relocate DTF	. 100	Phase 1
	Address Constants, Phase 2 (Part 3 of		Chart FE. \$\$BODSPW: VTOC Display,
	3)	- 101	Phase 2 (Part 1 of 2)
	Chart BD. MODLOOP Subroutine to	•	Chart FF. \$\$BODSPW: VTOC Display,
	\$\$BOPENR and \$\$BOPNR3	. 102	Phase 2 (Part 2 of 2)
	Chart BE. \$\$BOFNR3: Relocate DTF		Chart FG. \$\$BOVDMP: VTOC Dump (Part 1
	Address Constants, Phase 3 (Part 1 of		of 2)
	2)	. 103	Chart FH. \$\$BOVDMP: VTOC Dump (Part 2
	Chart BF. \$\$BOPNR3: Relocate DTF		of 2)
	Address Constants, Phase 3 (Part 2 of		Chart FI. \$\$BOWDMP: List VTOC 136
	2)	.104	Chart FJ. \$\$BOMSG1: Disk Open Error
	•		Message Writer, Phase 1
			-

Chart FK. \$\$BOMSG2: Disk Open Error Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 2) .138	Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 2) .144 Chart GC. \$\$BODMS2: Diskette Open
Chart FL. \$\$BOMSG2: Disk Open Error	Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 2) .145
Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 2) .139	Chart GD. \$\$BODSMO: Data Security
Chart FM. \$\$BODSMW: Data Security	Message Writer
Message Writer	Chart HG. \$\$BOPEN4: 3340 DTF Device
Chart FN. \$\$BOFSTV: Frror Statistics	Type Update Open (Part 1 of 2) 147
by Tape Volume (Part 1 of 2)141	Chart HH. \$\$BOPEN4: 3340 DTF Device
Chart FO. \$\$BOESTV: Frror Statistics	Type Update Open (Part 2 of 2)148
by Tape Volume (Part 2 of 2)142	Chart JA. \$\$BODSPO: Diskette VTOC
Chart GA. \$\$BODMSG: Diskette Open	Display, Phase 3
Message Writer, Phase 1	
Chart GB. \$\$BODMS2: Diskette Open	Chart JC. \$\$BOWDMO: Diskette List VTOC.151

The transfer of data between storage and the input/output devices attached to a system is controlled by the Input/Output Control System (IOCS). IOCS allows the problem programmer to specify:

- What data has to be transferred.
- Which I/O device is to be used.
- In which sequence data transfer is to take place.

VSE/Advanced Functions gives the problem programmer a choice of two input/output control systems:

- Physical IOCS (PIOCS)
- Logical IOCS (LIOCS).

Full details on physical IOCS can be found in VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference: Supervisor, LY33-9091.

LOGICAL IOCS

LIOCS performs the data management function required to locate and access logical records for processing, Some LIOCS routines are linked and executed as a part of the user's problem program. Others, notably SAM DASD and DAM LIOCS routines, are provided by IBM, loaded into the System Virtual Area (SVA) at IPL time, and are dynamically linked to the user's program. They provide an interface between the user's file processing routine and the

PIOCS routines. Some of the data management functions performed by LIOCS are:

- Blocking and deblocking of logical records.
- Switching between I/O areas when two areas are specified for a file.
- Handling End-of-File (EOF) and End-of-Volume (EOV) conditions.
- Issuing requests to PIOCS to execute the appropriate channel programs.

LIOCS makes use of two types of macro instructions to perform the required functions: imperative macro instructions and declarative macro instructions. Imperative macro instructions supply the facilities for reading, writing, blocking and deblocking, file labeling, and error checking. These instructions can be used only for data files that have been defined by declarative macro instructions. The declarative macro instructions specify the characteristics of a data file, such as the file name, I/O device type, or organization.

When LIOCS determines that a data area contains no logical record, it issues a physical IOCS macro instruction to execute the actual data transfer. Figure 1 shows the relationship between logical and physical IOCS for a LIOCS imperative READ macro issued to an input file when one I/O area is used.

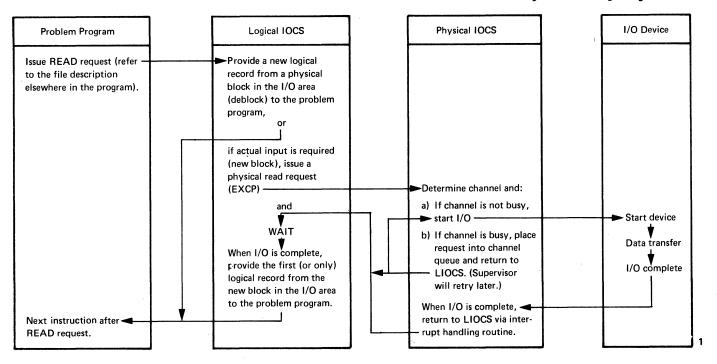


Figure 1. Example of LIOCS and PIOCS Interrelationship

LOGICAL IOCS PROCESSING METHODS

Logical IOCS routines process records in any one of three ways:

- Sequentially, through the use of the Sequential Access Method (SAM). This method can be used with all files on serial devices (such as card readers, tapes, and printers), and with sequentially organized files on disk and diskette.
- Randomly, through the use of the Direct Access Method (DAM). This method can be used with files on disk only.
- 3. Both sequentially and randomly, through the use of the Indexed Sequential Access Method (ISAM) or the Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM). These methods can be used with disk only. VSAM is available to VSE users through the VSE/VSAM program product.

Sequential Access Method (SAM)

Sequential processing reads/writes and processes successive records in a logical file. For example, card records are processed in the order the cards are fed; tape records are processed starting with the first record following the header labels and ending with the last record before the trailer labels. DASD records are processed starting with the beginning DASD address and continuing in order through the records on successive tracks and cylinders up to the ending address.

Diskette records are processed starting with the beginning diskette address and continuing in order through the records on successive tracks up to the ending address.

Volumes 2 and 4 contain a detailed discussion on sequential processing.

Direct Access Method (DAM)

The Direct Access Method processes records contained on IBM disk devices that are usually organized in a random manner. DAM is a method for processing records rather than an organizational method.

The location reference required by LIOCS for processing a file in a random manner consists of two parts: a track reference and a record reference. The record reference may be the record key, or, if no key areas are present, the record ID which is in the count area of each DASD record. Volume 3 contains a detailed description of random processing through DAM.

Indexed Sequential Access Method (ISAM)

The Indexed Sequential Access Method can process records on a DASD device in a random and/or sequential order. Both orders use the control information that is in the key field of each record. The user supplies ISAM with the key (control information) of the desired record. ISAM searches for the record and makes it available for processing.

In sequential processing, a series of records is made available. The first record to be processed is specified by the user. ISAM retrieves the succeeding records (on demand) from the logical file, in key order, until the problem program terminates the operation.

ISAM creates an organized file and then adds to, reads from, and updates records in that file. The file is organized from records that are presorted by control information. As the DASD records are loaded, ISAM constructs indexes for the logical file. If records are added to the file at a later stage, ISAM updates the indexes to reflect the new records. Volume 3 describes ISAM in detail.

<u>Virtual Storage Access Method (VSE/VSAM)</u>

The Virtual Storage Access Method can process records on a DASD device. It differs from the access methods mentioned so far in that:

- It allows three different ways of data organization, each of which allows different ways of processing.
- It includes a facility for automatic space allocation.
- It includes a set of service programs that allow for the execution of a number of specialized functions.
- It allows ISAM files that have been converted to the VSAM format to be processed using ISAM macros.
- It offers device independence due to the special format of its physical blocks.
- It offers data integrity control and access control by means of design, and integrity and access control options.

In VSE/VSAM, a user may choose between three types of data organization:

- Key-sequenced data organization.
- Entry-sequenced data organization.
- · Relative-record data organization.

In a <u>key-sequenced</u> organization, logical records are stored on the basis of a collating sequence determined by the content of the primary keys of those records. This key collating sequence is kept at all times. The key-sequenced organization is basically similar to the organization of an ISAM file.

Key-sequenced data organization allows for the following types of processing:

Keyed-direct processing.

- Keyed-sequential processing.
- Addressed-direct processing.
- Addressed-sequential processing.

In an <u>entry-sequenced</u> organization, logical records are stored physically in the same sequence in which they are entered. Newly added logical records are stored at the physical end of the file. This organization is basically similar to that of the SAM file.

Entry-sequenced data organization allows for the following types of processing:

- Addressed-direct processing.
- Addressed-sequential processing.

In a <u>relative-record</u> organization, logical records are stored in a string of fixed-length slots, each of which has a relative-record number, starting from one up to the maximum number of relative records that can be stored in the file. No index is built.

A slot may be empty or it may be occupied, in which case the record is identified by the number of the slot. example, a record in the tenth slot of the file gets relative-record 10; it will always be the tenth record of the file regardless of whether or not records have been written into the preceding nine slots. A record is retrieved by its relative-record (that is, slot) number, the number being treated as a key.

<u>Virtual and Basic Telecommunications Access</u> Methods (ACF/VTAM and BTAM-ES)

VSE/Advanced Functions communicates with remote terminals with Advanced Communications Function/VTAM or Basic Telecommunications Access Method - Extended Support.

These processing methods are not documented, beyond an occasional reference, in this set of Diagnosis Reference Manuals. Specific information concerning ACF/VTAM and BTAM-ES is found in the ACF/VTAM and BTAM-ES publications.

Storage Requirements

Some logical IOCS routines are generated as part of the problem program, others (supplied by IBM) reside in the System Virtual Area and are dynamically linked to the user program. Imperative macro expansions, which serve as linkage to the logical or physical IOCS routines, are generated inline at the point the macro is used in the problem program. The open,

close, FOF/EOV, and other special purpose routines are called into the B-transient (logical transient) area as required. The physical IOCS routines used by logical IOCS are generated as part of the supervisor program.

MODULAR-TABULAR SYSTEM

The term <u>tabular</u> and <u>modular</u> indicate that the system uses tables in conjunction with data handling modules to implement its functions.

The modular-tabular system has the advantages of:

- Saving assembly time by allowing the data handling modules to be generated separately and to be stored in the relocatable library for subsequent use.
- Using one module with many files if the device types are the same and the files are similar.

The modular-tabular combination for a specific file is generated by two declarative macros: the file definition macros (DTFxx) and the module generation macros (xxMOD).

The <u>file definition</u> macros describe the logical file, indicate the type of processing to be used for the file, and specify storage areas (work area, I/O area) for the file. A number of file definition macros define the files processed by logical IOCS, and one defines files processed by physical IOCS (DTFPH). The file to be processed determines the type of file definition macro to be used.

The <u>module generation</u> macros generate the data handling logic modules. These modules contain generalized routines needed to perform the functions of the logical IOCS imperative macros. The generalized routines in the logic modules are altered and made more specific through various parameters (specified by the problem programmer) included in the xxMOD macro statements. It is possible, therefore, to generate many variations of a particular type of logic module, each specifically suited to the need of the problem programmer. For sequential DASD and DAM files, the data handling logic modules are provided by IBM. If the user provides a module in these cases, it is overridden by the IBM-supplied version.

DECLARATIVE MACROS

DTF (Define the File) Macros

Whenever logical IOCS imperative macro instructions are used in a problem program to control the transfer of records in a file, that file must be defined by a declarative DTF macro instruction. The DTF macro instruction describes (through various parameters specified by the problem programmer) the characteristics of the logical file, indicates the type of processing for the file, and specifies the main storage areas and routines. Figure 2 summarizes the various DTF table types supported by VSE. Detailed descriptions of the logical IOCS file definition (DTF) macros and their parameters appear in <u>VSE/Advanced Functions Macro Reference.</u>

In general, the IBM-supplied file definition declarative macros are device-oriented. In addition, three declarative macros, DTFSR, DTFBG, and DTFEN are supported by VSE/Advanced Functions to provide upward compatibility from the IBM Basic Operating System (8K system). A brief description follows for each of the DTF macros available to users of VSE/Advanced Functions.

<u>DTFCD</u>. Define The File for a Card Device. To define a file associated with the records on a card unit or on the 3881 Optical Mark Reader.

<u>PTFCN</u>. Define The File for a CoNsole. To define a file associated with the console printer-keyboard (3210 or 3215) or with a Display Operator Console.

<u>DTFCP</u>. Define The File for a Compiler. To provide limited device independence for IBM-written programs (COBOL, FORTRAN, PL/I). Because the DTFCP macro is written specifically to handle the needs of IBM internal programs, it is not documented in any System Reference Library publications.

<u>DTFDA</u>. Define The File for Direct Access method. To determine a file when DASD (Direct Access Storage Device) records are to be processed by the Direct Access Method.

<u>DTFDI</u>. Define The File for Device Independent system files. To define files assigned to the device independent system logical units SYSRDR, SYSIPT, SYSPCH, and SYSLST to provide DOS/VSE Assembler users with the same capabilities extended by DTFCP.

DTFDR. Define the File for the 3886 Optical Character Reader. To define a file associated with a 3886 Optical Character Reader.

 $\underline{\mathtt{DTFDU}}.$ Define the File for a Diskette Unit. To define a file associated with a 3540 Diskette Input/Output Unit.

<u>DTFIS</u>. Define The File for Indexed Sequential file management system. To define a file organized and processed by the Indexed Sequential File Management System.

Define The File for Magnetic Recognition. To define a file associated with a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) device (1255/1259/1419) or Optical Reader/Sorter (1270-1275*).

DTFMT. Define The File for Magnetic Tape. To define a file associated with a magnetic tape device.

DTFOR. Define The File for an Optical
Reader. To define a file associated with an Optical Character Reader device (1287).

DTFPH. Define The File for processing by PHysical IOCS. To define a magnetic tape, diskette, or DASD file with standard labels that is processed by physical IOCS when the user wishes to use the OPEN and CLOSE macros for label processing. DTFPH parameters define the magnetic tape, diskette, and DASD files. No other files processed by physical IOCS require definition.

Only the following logical IOCS functions can be performed for files defined by a DTFPH macro.

- Check the header labels on input files, and close these files when requested.
- Create header labels on output files, and create trailer labels when the file is closed.
- Force end-of-volume on an output file when requested. (Force end-of-volume is not supported on diskettes.)

When a DTFPH macro instruction is encountered at assembly time, the assembler builds a DTF table that includes only the parameters needed for the OPEN, CLOSE, and FEOV routines. The OPEN, CLOSE, and FEOV macro expansions call the open and close routines

into the supervisor B-transient area at object time.

DTFPR. Define The File for a PRinter. define a file associated with a printer device, or a 2560 MFCM or 3525 Card Punch with the print feature.

DTFPT Define The File for Paper Tape. To define a paper tape file.

DTFSD. Define The File for Sequential DASD. To define sequential files on a Direct Access Storage Device (DASD).

DTFSR. Define The File in a SeRial type file device. To define a file for sequential processing of records on any IOCS supported I/O device.

The VSE DTFSR macro definition accepts either the BOS or BPS DTFSR macro as valid input. After determining the device type required, the VSE DTFSR macro calls, from the source statement library, the appropriate VSE DTF macro. The DTF macro called by the VSE DTFSR then sets up a DTF table in the usual manner.

The VSE macro definition is used only to allow upward compatibility and DTFSR should not be used as a statement in the user's VSE source deck.

DTFBG. The BeGin-definition must be punched with DTFBG in the operation field and DISK in the operand field. The name field is left blank. DTFBG is included in VSE to provide compatibility with the BOS DTFSR macro instruction.

DIFEN. Define The Field End. To show there are no more DTF source statements to process. Only to allow upward compatibility for BOS and BPS users.

ACB. The ACB macro produces an Access Method Control Block (ACB) for a VSE/VSAM file. The control block identifies the key-sequenced file and its index or the entry-sequenced file that is to be processed, and indicates the types of requests that are to be made. The ACB is similar to a DTF in that it identifies the file to be processed. However, most information about the file, such as key length and record format, is specified in the DEFINE command of the access method services. Information supplied in this command resides in the VSAM catalog and is read into storage when the ACB is opened.

^{*} These devices are not available in the United States of America.

```
|DTF Type Code|
   (Byte 20)
of DTF Table | DTF
                        |Description
     X'00'
                | CTFCD | Combined files
     X 1011
                 |DTFPT |Paper tape files
     X 1021
                 |DTFCD | Reader and 3881 Optical Mark Reader files
     X . 03.
                |DTFCN |Console
     X 1041
                | CTFCD | Punch files
     X 1 051
                |DTFCD |Reader files on 2560, 5424/5425
     X'07'
                 |DIFPR |Printer files on 2560
     X 1 08 1
                |DTFPR |Printer files
     X1091
                IDTFOR (Optical Reader files except 3881 and 3886 files
     Y OA .
                 |DTFCR |Optical Reader files (HEADER=YES)
     X º OB º
                 |DTFMR | Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) and
                         |Optical Reader/Sorter files
     X . 0C.
                 |DTFDR |3886 Optical Character Reader files
     X' 10'
                 |DTFMT | Magnetic tape work files
                 | DTFCP | Magnetic tape work files (compiler).
     Y 111
                 |DTFMT |Nonstandard or unlabeled tape files
                |DTFMT |Standard labeled, output tape files | DTFPH |Standard labeled, output tape files (physical IOCS)
     X 1 12 1
     X 1 131
                 |DTFMT | Standard labeled, input tape files (read backward)
     X 114 1
                 |DTFMT |Standard labeled, input tape files (read forward)
     X 1 1A 1
                 |DTFDU |Diskette Input/Output Unit files
     X 1201
                 | DTFSD | Sequential DASD work files and data files
                |DTFCP |DASD work files (compiler)
|DTFPH |Sequential DASD files, MOUNTED=SINGLE (physical IOCS)
     X 1211
     X 1 22 1
                 IDTFDA |Direct access files
     X 1 23 1
                 |DTFPH |Direct access files, MOUNTED=ALL (physical IOCS)
                | DTFIS | Indexed sequential, LOAD file | DTFIS | Indexed sequential, ADD file | DTFIS | Indexed sequential, RETRVE file
     X1241
     X 1 25 1
     X 1 261
     X 1 27 1
                 |DTFIS |Indexed sequential, ADDRTR file
     X 1 281
                         |Access Method Control Block for VSE/VSAM
     X 1 30 1
                 | DTFCP | Compiler file for DOS Version 1 (Note 1)
                |DTFCP |Compiler file for DOS Versions 2 onward |DTFCP |Compiler file for DOS Versions 2 onward (Note 2)
     X'31'
     X'32'
                 | DTFDI | Device independent system unit files
     X 1331
     X 40 1
                 |DTFBT |Basic Telecommunications Access Method - Extended Support
                         (BTAM-ES) file (Notes 3 and 4)
|X'60' - X'67'|
```

Figure 2. DTF Table Types

Notes:

- DTF type is X'30' except for tape or DASD assigned to units SYS000 to SYSnnn. In this case, the DTFCP open phases change the DTF type to X'10' for tape work files, or X'20' for DASD work files.
- DTF type is X'32' except for DASD assigned to units SYS000 to SYSnnn. In this case, the DTFCP open phases change the DTF type to X'20' for DASD work files.
- The following control unit codes are ORed into the low-order 4 bits of the DTF type code.

Control Unit	Code
7770	1
2848	3
2701	4
2702	5
2703	6

4. The DTF tables for BTAM-ES files are not documented in this manual. They are documented in the BTAM-FS publications.

MOD (Module Generation) Macros

Each DTF (except DTFCN, DTFPH, DTFSR, DTFDA, DTFSD, and DTFDI or DTFCP files residing on DASD) is linked to a logical IOCS module generated by an xxMOD macro instruction. These modules provide the necessary instructions to perform the input/output functions required by the problem program. For example, the module can read or write data, test for unusual input/output conditions, block or deblock records, or place logical records in a work area.

Some of the module functions are provided on a selective basis, according to the parameters specified in the xxMOD macro instruction. The problem programmer has the option of selecting (or omitting) some of these functions according to the requirements of his program. The omission of some of these functions results in smaller main-stcrage requirements for a particular module.

There are two options for MOD macros. The user can:

- Insert the MOD macro instruction with its file parameters in the problem program source deck. In this case, the logic module is assembled in line with the problem program.
- 2. Choose to generate the logic modules needed for his file formats and system configuration. To do this, source decks using macro parameters to describe the file attributes are punched for each MOD macro statement. The logic module macro definition generates its own unique name, or the user can name the module in the name field of the MOD macro statement. The user name overrides the name the macro definition normally generates.

For each type of xxMOD macro, the problem programmer can generate, by issuing the macro with varying parameters for each required module, many logic modules. The logic modules must be cataloged in the relocatable library. The CATALR control cards are automatically generated when the module is assembled.

At assembly time, the Assembler produces an EXTRN (External Symbol) card for every V-type constant, or EXTRN statement, in the user program. At the time this program is link edited, the Linkage Editor resolves these EXTRN symbols. When these are resolved, the program is cataloged into the core image library, from which it is called for execution.

TRACK HOLD FUNCTION

The track (or control interval) hold function provides DASD track protection when the parameter HOLD=YES is specified in the operand of the module generation macro (DAMOD/ISMOD) and the DTFSD/DTFDA/DTFIS macro. If a task has previously accessed a DASD track and is currently modifying a record from that track, DASD track protection prevents another task in storage from accessing that track. The task attempting to access the held track is put in the wait state until the track has been released.

For DAM and ISAM, the problem program must issue the FREE macro to release a track held on READ operation. The module automatically holds and releases all tracks for WRITE operations.

For sequential DASD, the track is held and freed implicitly by the logic modules.

The track (or CI, for FBA) hold function is applicable to four situations:

- Sequential DASD update files (data).
- Sequential DASD work files with the UPDATE=YES parameter specified.
- DAM files.
- ISAM files.

REENTERABLE MODULES

A reenterable module is a logic module that can be used asynchronously, or shared, by more than one file. Including the R DONLY=YES parameter in the module generation macro generates a reenterable logic module. The RDONLY (read-only) parameter implies and assures, regardless of the processing requirements of any file(s) using the module, that the generated logic module is never modified in any way. To provide this feature, unique save areas, external to the logic module, are established, one for each task using the module. Each save area must be 72 bytes and double-word aligned. A task must provide the address of its unique save area in register 13 before an imperative macro is issued to a file and a logic module entered by the task.

The IBM-supplied logic modules used for DAM and sequential DASD (DTFSD, DTFCP, DTFDI) files are read-only and re-entrant, but do <u>not</u> require the user to provide a save area address in register 13 and will ignore such an address if provided.

Reenterable modules include: CDMOD, CPMOD, DAMOD, DIMOD, DUMOD, ISMOD, MTMOD, and SDMOD.

INTERRELATIONSHIPS OF THE DECLARATIVE MACRO INSTRUCTIONS

The DTFCD, DTFCP, DTFDA, DTFDI, DTFDR, DTFDU, DTFIS, DTFMR, DTFMI, DTFOR, DTFPR, DTFPT, and DTFSD declarative macros are similar in one respect. They each generate a DTF table that references an IOCS logic module. The first 20 bytes of each table have the same format; that is, a Command Control Block (CCB) and a logic module address. The remainder of each table is tailored to the particular device and file type.

When one of these DTF macro instructions is encountered at assembly time, the assembler builds a DTF table tailored to the DTF parameters. The table contains:

- Device CCB.
- A V-type statement used by the Linkage Editor to resolve the linkage to the logic module with this DTF. For DTFSD and DTFDA, zeros are generated, since OPEN will dynamically fill in this field with the address of the IBM-supplied logic module.
- Logic indicators; that is, one I/O area, two I/O areas, device type, and so on.
- Addresses of all (except work files) of the areas and controls used by this device.

Regardless of the method of assembling logic modules and DTF tables (that is, with the main program or separately), a symbolic linkage results between the DTF table and the logic module. Normally, the linkage editor resolves these linkages at edit time. However, for logic modules that

support Sam and DAM files on DASD, the Linkage Editor resolves these linkages at edit time.

To accomplish the linkage between the DTF table and the logic module, the assembler generates a V-type address constant in the DTF table and a named CSECT in the logic module. To resolve this linkage, the linkage symbols (module names) must be identical. Figure 3 shows the relationship of the program (the imperative macro), the DTF, and the logic module. Imperative macros initiate the action to be performed on the file by branching to the logic module entry point generated in the DTF table. TAPE is the name of the file; IJFFBCWZ the name of the logic module.

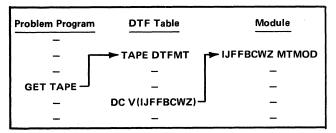


Figure 3. The Relationship Between Imperative and Declarative Macros

IMPERATIVE MACROS

The problem programmer issues imperative logical IOCS macro instructions to initiate such functions as opening a file, making records available for processing, writing records that have been processed, controlling physical device operations, etc. Figure 4 summarizes the macro instructions provided by IBM for logical IOCS. Figure 5 further defines the general function of each of the macro instructions and indicates the devices with which they are used.

MACROS	DTFCD	DTFCN	DTFCP	DTFDA	DTFDI	DTFDR	DTFDU	DTFIS	DTFMR	DTFMT	DTFOR	DTFPH	DTFPR	DTFPT	DTFSD	DTFSR
CHECK									Х	Х					Х	
CLOSE(R)	Х		Х	Х	X	Х	Х		Х	Х	X	Х	X	X	X	X
CNTRL	Х			Х		Х		Х		Х	Х		x ²		Х	×
DISEN									X							
DSPLY											X					
ENDFL								X								
ERET			,	Х	-		Х	X		Х					Х	
ESETL								Х								
FEOV										Х						X
FEOVD				X											Х	
FREE				Х											X 1	
GET	Х	X	Х		Х		Х	Х	Х	X	Х	1		Х	Х	X
LBRET				Х						X					Х	Х
LITE									X							
NOTE										X.					Х	
OPEN(R)	Х		×	X	Х	X	X	Х	Х	X	X.	Х	Х	X	Х	Х
POINTR										X1					X1	
POINTS			5.0							X 1					X1	
POINTW										X 1					X ¹	
PRTOV													X ²			Х
PUT	Х	Х	X		X		Х	Х		X			X	Х	Х	X
PUTR		Х										,				
RDLNE											X					
READ				X		Х	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	Х	Х	Х					Х	
RELSE						1				Х					Х	Х
RESCN											Х					
SEOV										X						
SETDEV																
SETFL								X ·							,	
SETL					·			Х			,					
TRUNC										Х					Х	Х
WAITF				Х		Х		Х	Х		. X					
WRITE				Х				Х		×					Х	

Figure 4. Logical IOCS Imperative Macros and DTFs

						TYPE	OF	PRO	CESS	ING WI	TH LC	GIC	AL IO	cs						
								Seq	uentia	al							Ind	exe Sec	d Juer	ntia
Macro Ir	struction	3210/3215 Printer. Keyboards, Model 115, 125 Display Operator Console	1287 Optical Reader	1403/1443/3203/3211 ^{13/} 3800/ 3289-4, 5203 Printer, 2560, 5424/5425 with print feature	1419/1255/1259 Magnetic Ink Character Reader	1270/1275 Optical Reader/Sorter	3881 Optical Mark Reader	3886 Optical Character Reader	1442/2520/2540/3525 Punch 2560 MFCM, 5424/5425 MFCU	1442/2501/2520/2540/ 2596/3504/3505 Reader, 2560 MFCM, 5424/5425 MFCU	2311/2314/2319/3330/3340 3330-II/3350/FBA DASD	3540 Diskette Input/Output Unit	2400 and 3400 Magnetic Tape Units	2671/1017 Paper Tape Reader	1018 Paper Tape Punch	Direct Access	Load File	Add Records	Random Retrieve	Sequential Retrieve
Initialize	OPEN(R)		х	х	Х	Х	х	Х	Х	х	х	Х	х	х	х	X	х	х	х	х
IIIIIIaiize	LBRET1										Х		Х							
	GET	Х	Х		Х	Х	χ²			X2	Х	Х	Х	Х						X
	PUT	Х		Х					Х	X4	X ³	Х	Х		X					X
	PUTR ¹¹	Х																		
	READ		Х		Х	·X		Х			Х		Х						Х	
•	WRITE										Х		Х			X	Х	Х	X	
Process	CHECK				Х	Х					X		Х			Г				Г
	RELSE ⁵										Х		Х			Г				
	TRUNK ⁶										Х		·X							
	WAITF		Х		Х	Х		Х								X	Х	X	X	
	RDLNE		Х													Г				
	RESCN		X			,														
	DSPLY		х															Т		
***************************************	SETFL																X	_		Г
	ENDFL																Х			
Set Mode	SETL																			x
	ESETL															\vdash		_	_	x
	SETDEV							Х								_	_		<u> </u>	
	CNTRL7		X	X			X	Х	Х	X	X12		Х			X	 			1
	CHNG		Ë	 ^ 			· ·				-``-		X			 	 		_	┢
Non Data	PRTOV		_	X10												_	 	-	 	1
Operations	DISEN				х	X	_								_	_	 	-	_	_
	LITE				X9	X9											┰		\vdash	
	ERET						_				X	X	X	,		 	x	х	x	x
	READ										X		X		_		H	H	_	-
	WRITE		├─	 			\vdash				x		x		-	-		-	 	
Work Files	CHECK				-						x		x			 	-	\vdash	_	┢
for DASD and	NOTE		-	 							x	-	x		_	-	 	\vdash	<u> </u>	\vdash
Magnetic	POINTR	<u> </u>	 	 			 				x		x			-	-	-	├	\vdash
Tape	POINTW		 	1							x		x			┝	 	-	<u> </u>	├
	POINTS	 	 	 			<u> </u>				x		x		-		-	\vdash	├	├
	CLOSE(R)	 	×	×	x	Х	x	Х	х	х	x	×	x	х	х	x	×	x	×	x
	FEOV	 	⊢	 ^ 	\vdash	_^_	 ^	 ^- -	<u> </u>	├ ^		 ^ 	x		<u> </u>	1	├	 ``	Ë	۱Ĥ
	FEOVD						-				х					-	├─	-	ļ	├
Complete	FREE			ļ			-				X8				х	-	├	-		├
			 -	ļ											<u> ^</u>	-	├	\vdash	 	├
	LBRET ¹		<u> </u>								X		X			-	├	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	├-
	SEOV Applies only			L									Х			L		L	L	Щ

- Notes: 1. Applies only if DTFSR, DTFMT, DTFDA, or DTFPH LABADDR or XTNTXIT is specified.
 - 2. In the 2520 or 2540, GET normally reads cards in the read feed. If TYPEFLE=CMBND is specified, GET reads cards at the punch—feed—read station. For the 3881, the WORKNAME operand is invalid.
 - 3. Put rewrites on input DASD records if UPDATE is specified.
 - 4. In the 1442, 2520, or 2540, PUT punches an input card with additional information if TYPEFLE=CMBND is specified; PUT is specified by the 2560, 3525, and 5424/5425, if read/punch associated files are specified.
 - 5. Applies only to blocked input records.
 - 6. Applies only to blocked output records.
 - 7. Provided only for upward compatibility for BPS and BOS.
 - 8. Work files only.
 - 9. Applicable to 1419 and 1275 with the Pocket Light Feature.
 - 10. Not for 2560 or 5424/5425 with print feature.
 - 11. Display Operator Console only.
 - 12. CNTRL is treated as a no-op for FBA.
 - 13. Applies also to 3211 compatable printers (with device type code of PRT1).

Figure 5. Logical IOCS Imperative Macros and Devices

LIOCS Volume 1, General Information and Imperative Macros

IMPERATIVE MACRC EXPANSIONS

For each imperative macro issued by the problem programmer, the Assembler program generates an in-line expansion that links the instruction to the DTF table (and thus the logic module) for the specified file. The <u>filename</u> used for the DTFxx macro describing the file must always be an operand of the imperative macro instruction.

Typical expansions and brief descriptions of the function and procedure of each of the logical IOCS imperative macro instructions follow.

CHECK Macro

-	Label	CHECK	filename, PARAM*	
!		L	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
		IL	0,=A (PARM)	Loads address of control field. *
		•		Loads address of logic module. Branch to CHECK routine in lcgic module.

* Optional

<u>Function:</u> This macro instruction forces the program to wait for completion of the I/O operation started by a READ or WRITE macro for the data file specified.

<u>Procedure:</u> This macro instruction waits for the completion of the input/output operation, started by a READ or WRITE, for the device associated with the filename. If the I/O operation is completed without an error or other exceptional condition, CHECK returns control to the next sequential instruction. If the operation results in an unusual condition (FOV, EOF, overflow, errors), CHECK processes the user's option specified in the DTF. Then, if the unusual condition is resolved, control returns to the user. Generally, if the unusual condition is not resolved, the routine posts a bit in some area set aside to indicate the condition, or issues a message to the operator on the system console printer.

CLOSE Macro

Label	ICLOSE	FILEA, FILEB,, FILEN	
IJJCxxxx	DC LA	0,4 0F'0' 1,=C'\$\$BCLOSE' 0,*+4+4*(EN-1)	
 		 	The second operand causes a branch to the SVC 2 instruction. Start of file list. (The file list contains the addresses of the DTF tables for all the files specified in the
 ·	DC	 A (FILEr) 	CLOSE macro operand.) Address of the DTF table for the last file specified in the CLOSE macro operand.
,	ISVC	12	Fetches the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOSE.

|FILEn = Symbolic address of the DTF table for the last file specified in the CLOSE macro operand.

N = Sequence number of a file (1, 2, 3) in the order it appears in the CLOSE macro operand.

 $\varepsilon N = N \text{ of last file +1.}$

<u>Function:</u> The CLOSE macro instruction deactivates any file previously opened on any input/output unit in the system. The symbolic name of the logical file, assigned in the DTF header entry, is required in this instruction. Up to 16 files can be closed by one instruction by entering additional filename parameters. CLOSE is required whenever logical IOCS macro instructions have been used to transfer data, and the file has been previously opened.

<u>Procedure:</u> The CLOSE macro instruction calls the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOSE, into the logical transient area to determine the device type assigned to the file.

For the card readers, card punches, printers, CLOSE simply sets a bit off in the DTF table to indicate that the file is no longer available for processing. For magnetic tape, DASD, and MICR devices, the monitor calls the appropriate device-oriented close logical transient. For magnetic tape and DASD files, the CLOSE macro instruction causes trailer label processing for an input file, and trailer label creation for an output file, if necessary. If a magnetic tape file is being closed, the rewind option selected is executed. The file is deactivated by setting a bit off in the DTF table to indicate that the file is no longer available for processing.

For Diskette I/O Unit input files, the diskette is fed out and the file is deactivated. For output files, the HDR1 label is updated to reflect the proper end-of-data, the diskette is fed out, and the file is deactivated. The following table defines feed control:

	1	Input Programmer Logical Unit	1	Output Programmer Logical Unit	Input System Logical Unit	Output System Logical Uni
DTFCP	+-	A	-+ -	A	N) A
DTFDI	- 1	N A	1	N A	l N	j A
DTFDU	- 1	S	1	S	N	i h
DTFPH	İ	A	1	A	i N	i A

If physical IOCS is used, CLOSE is required only when standard labels are to be checked or written.

CLOSER Macro

Label	ICLOSER	FILEA, FILEB,, FILEN	
 	DC B DC LA MVI	0, 4 0F	
	AR	0, IJJCxxxx+N*4 0, 1 0, IJJCxxxx+N*4 	Gets address of DTF table for file to be opened. Adds displacement value. Returns new DTF table address to file list. (The three instructions listed are repeated for each file specified in the OPENR macro operand starting with FILEA.)
IJJCxxxx	CNOP	1,=C'\$\$BCLOSE' 0,4 0,*+4+4*(&N-1) 	Initializes to fetch \$\$BCLOSE. Register 0 points to the address of the DTF table for first in the file list. The second operand causes a branch to the SVC 2 instruction.
	DC • •	A (FILEA) A (FILEB) A (FILEn) 	Start of file list. (The file list contains the addresses of the DTF tables for all files specified in the CLOSER macro operand.) Address of the DTF table for the last file in the CLOSER macro operand.
	ISVC	12	Fetches Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOSE.
ma N = Se	cro opera	and. umber of a file (1, 2,	e for the last file specified in the CLOSER 3), in the order it appears in the CLOSER

 $\delta N = N$ of the last file +1.

Function: The CLOSER macro instruction deactivates files used by self-relocating programs.

<u>Procedure:</u> The CLOSER macro instruction performs its function in the same manner as the CLOSE macro.

CNTRL Macro

Lab	el CNTRI	filename,code,	n ¹ , n ²	•	•	3
	MVI LA	23(1),code 0,code 15,16(1)	Loads address of DTF table. Puts control code in the DTF table if delayed printer control. Loads control code. Loads address of logic module. Branch to CNTRL routine in logic module.	 * *	*	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
1. 2. 3.	Instructi	on assembled if	skip or space immediate is specified. delayed skip or space is specified. both delayed and immediate skip and space are	specifie	đ.	

Label	CNTRI	filename, code,	n ¹ , n ²
	L	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
	MVI	72(1),code	Puts command code for DMK, LMK, and ESP on a 3886 to the CCW in the DTF.
•	M VC	*+11(1),fldname	Generated if code is ESP and n ² is fldname. Move byte at fldname to second DC of parameter list (DC generated later).
	MVC	*+11(1),0(r)	Same, but n ² is a register.
	BAL	10,*+6	Generated if n ¹ is a number.
	DC	[AL1(n1)	Always generated if BAL is generated.
	DC	(AL1(n2)	[Generated if code is LMK or ESP and n ² is a number.
	DC	AL1(0)	Generated if code is LMK or ESP and n ² is fldname or a register. The value is filled in by one of the MVC
		1	instructions described above.
	L	[0,=A(fldname)]	Generated if code is DMK or LMK and n² is fldname.
	LR	10,r	Same, but n² is a register other than register 0.
	L	15, 16 (1)	Loads address of logic module.
	BALR	114,15	Branch to CNTRL routine in logic module.

<u>Function:</u> The CNTRL (control) macro instruction provides commands for these input/output units: magnetic tape units, card reader-punches, punches, DASD, printers, and 3881 and 3886 optical readers. Commands apply to physical nondata operations of a unit and are peculiar to the unit involved. They specify such functions as rewinding tape, stacker selection of cards and documents, line spacing on a printer, etc. When a CNTRL macro is executed, the routine waits for completion of the operation before returning control to the user. On DASD, however, control returns at channel end.

Whenever CNTRL is to be issued in the problem program, the DTF entry CONTFOL=YES must be included in the file definition (except in DTFDR and DTFMT).

The CNTRL macro instruction $\underline{\text{must}}$ $\underline{\text{not}}$ be used for printer or punch files, if the data records contain control characters and the entry CTLCHR= is included in the file definition (DTF) macro.

<u>Procedure:</u> The control routine waits for completion of any previous operation of the file. Then the device symbolic address is moved to the CCB. The command code is moved to the CCW, and the CCB address is loaded into register 1. Next an SVC 0 is issued to perform the control function indicated by the CNTRL macro instruction. Then control returns to the problem program. CNTRL is treated as a no-op for sequential (DTFSD) files.

DISEN Macro

Ī	abel	DISEN	filename	
!-		L	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
!		L	15,16(1)	Loads address of logic module.
	1	BAL	14,12(15)	Branch to DISEN routine in logic module.

Function: The DISEN (disengage) macro stops the feeding of documents through a magnetic ink character reader (MICF) or Optical Reader/Sorter.

Procedure: The DISEN macro modifies the instructions in the CCW chain and sets the disengage bit (bit 0 of byte 21) in the DTF table. Control returns to the problem program at the next sequential instruction following the DISEN macro expansion without waiting for completion of the disengage operation.

DSPLY Macro

L	abel DSPL	filename,r1,r2	
	I L	1,=A(filename) Loads address of DTF table. 88(8,1),0(r²) Puts Load Format CCW for document coordinates of field to b displayed in DTF table.	el
	1	96(16,1),0(r1) Puts Load Format CCW for document coordinates of reference mark for field to be displayed in DTF table.	1
	L BAL	15,16(1)	! ! !

Function: The DSPLY macro displays a specific field on the display scope of the IBM 1287 Optical Reader for entering the field from the keyboard. The DSPLY macro should be used in Document Mode only.

The macro requires three parameters, none of which can be omitted. The first parameter is the symbolic name of the 1287 file as specified in the DTFOR header entry. This parameter may also be a register that contains the address of the file. The second parameter must be a register that contains the address of the CCW defining the coordinates of the field to be displayed. The third parameter must also be a register that contains the address of the landmark defining CCW.

Procedure: If the reader cannot scan a complete field due to specific characters or fields running together, the field containing the error is retried by PIOCS. If still unsuccessful, the user is informed of the condition via his error correction routine (specified in the DTFOR COREXIT entry). The DSPLY macro is then issued to display the field in question on the 1287 display scope. The operator can then key in the correct characters. If an error is made in keying in the characters, the operator should press the cancel key and then the enter key, and the field will be redisplayed.

ENDFL Macro

-	Label ENDFI	L filename	,
-	L LA SVC	0,=A(filename) Loads address of DTF table. 1,C'\$\$BENDFL' Loads B-transient phase name. 2 Fetches phase \$\$BENDFL.	

<u>Function:</u> The ENDFL (END File Load mode) macro instruction ends the ISAM mode initiated by the SETFL macro. The name of the file that has been loaded is the only parameter required, and must be the same as the name specified in the file definition (DTF) macro.

<u>Procedure:</u> The FNDFL macro instruction performs a close operation for a file that was just loaded. It writes the last block of data records, if necessary, and then writes a DASD end-of-file record after the last record written. The EOF record is a DASD record with a data length of zero. The routine also updates the index entries as required, and writes dummy index entries for the unused portion of the prime data extent. Control then returns to the problem program.

ERET Macro

	Label	LTRLI	!						 		 	1.	!
1		B	1	0 (14)	Ιf	operand	is	SKIP.					1
		В	١	4 (14) 1	Ιf	operand	is	IGNORE.					- 1
		ΙB	1	8 (14)	Ιf	operand	is	RETRY.					1
	L								 	 	 		

<u>Function:</u> The ERFT (Error RFTurn) macro returns control to a logic module from an error routine in the problem program when ERREXT=YES is specified in the DTF macro. The choice of one of the three operands provided (SKIP, IGNORE, or RETRY) allows the problem programmer to select the subsequent action of the logic module. The problem programmer should select his operand based on the nature of the error as analyzed within his routine.

<u>Procedure:</u> An ERET macro issued in the problem program error routine generates a branch instruction to return control to the logic module. Register 14 in the generated branch instruction contains the address of the return point in the module. The macro operand (SKIP, IGNORE, or RETRY) supplies the displacement (0, 4, or 8 bytes respectively) from the return point of an instruction that returns control to the desired reentry point in the logic module.

ESETL Macro

Label	ESETI	Lifilename		1
	L L BAL	1,=A(filename) 15,16(1) 14,20(15)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of logic module. Branch to ESETL routine in logic module.	1

<u>Function:</u> The ESFTL (Find SET Limit) macro instruction ends the sequential mode initiated by the SETL macro.

<u>Procedure:</u> If blocked records are specified, ESETL writes the last block if a PUT macrowas issued.

FEOV Macro

	Label	FEOV	filename	
-		 		
	1	L	1,=A(filename) Loads address of DTF table.	
		L	15,16(1) Loads address of logic module.	
		BAL	14,16(15) Branch to FEOV routine in logic module.	
- 1	L			

Function: The FEOV (Force End-of-Volume) macro instruction is for either input or output files on magnetic tape or DASD devices to force an end-of-volume condition when neither an EOF indicator nor a reflective marker has been sensed. It indicates that processing of records on one volume is considered finished, but that more records for the same logical file are to be read from, or written on, the following volume.

The FEOV macro fetches the EOF/EOV Monitor, \$\$BCEOV1, to close the current volume and open the new volume.

Procedure: This routine forces an end-of-volume in an output file by setting the EOV switch in the PUT routine. For an input file, the EOV switch in the GET routine is set. For PUT, a record is written as required, and control returns to the user.

FEOVD Macro

	Label	FEOVD	filename			1
1	IJJOXXXX	BAL	0,*+8 A(filename)		address of logic module. phase \$\$BOSDEV.	

Function: The FEOVD (Forced End-of-Volume for Disk) macro instruction is used for either input or output files in sequential disk processing to force an end-of-volume condition before end-of-volume has actually been reached. It indicates that record processing on one volume is finished, but that more records for the same logical file are to be read from, or written on, the following volume. If no extents are available on the new volume, the job is canceled.

The FEOVD macro fetches \$\$BOSDEV to close the current volume and open a new volume.

Procedure: When FEOVD is issued, an end of extent switch is set in the DTFSD. When the next GET or PUT is issued, end of extent is detected and the open transients are called.

FREE Macro

[]	Label FREE	filename		
-	I L	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	address of DTF table. address of logic module.	
Ĺ	BAL	14,44(15) Branc	n to FREE routine in the logic module.	

Function: The FREE macro instruction releases a protected track (Track hold function included for Asynchronous Processing) on a direct access storage device.

Procedure: The FREE routine in the logic module determines the seek address of the protected (held) track, and loads the address of the control seek CCB into general register 1. The routine then issues an SVC 36 to free the track. For sequential DASD files, FREE is treated as a no-op since the holding and freeing of tracks (or control intervals) is done implicitly by the logic modules.

GET Macro

	Label	GET	filename,PARAM	*
1		L	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
		L	0,=A(PARAM)	Loads address of work area if specified. *
		. –	15, 16 (1) 14,8 (15)	Loads address of logic module. Branch to GET routine in logic module.

* Optional

Function: This instruction makes the next sequential logical record from an input file available for processing in either an input area or a specified work area. It is used for any input file in the system, and for any type of record: blocked or unblocked, spanned or unspanned, fixed or variable length, and undefined. When the GET routine detects an end-of-volume or an end-of-file condition, it calls in the EOV/EOF monitor, which initiates the correct file termination procedures.

The GET macro instruction is written with one or two parameters, depending on the area where the records will be processed. Either form, but not both, can be used for one logical file. If records are to be processed directly in the input area(s), the GET macro instruction requires only one parameter. This parameter specifies the name of the file from which the record is to be retrieved. The file name must be the same as the one The file name must be the same as the one specified in the DTF header entry for the file.

The second parameter is optional, and if used, specifies the address (or a register containing the address) of the work area. This parameter is used if records are to be processed in a work area defined by the user. The second parameter causes the GET routine to move each logical record from the input area to the work area.

Procedure: Two input areas permit an overlap of data transfer and processing operations. Whenever two input areas are specified, the LIOCS routines transfer records alternately to each area (except when combined files are specified). The LIOCS routines completely handle the switching of I/O areas so that the next sequential record is always available to the problem program for processing. If the file is blocked, it is not necessary to transfer data from the input device to main storage on every GET instruction. Only when the first record of a block is required (blocked records), is it necessary to transfer data.

If overlap is possible, the transfer of data required for the current GET was initiated on a previous GFT. If overlap is not possible, it is necessary to start data transfer, read data, and wait for completion of the I/O operation. The handling of the data is done after a test for unusual condition is made. Unusual conditions are: end of reel, wrong-length record, irrecoverable error, no record found, etc.

LBRET Macro

Lab	el IBRE	г 1	
	SR	1,1	Zero register 1.
	SVC	9	Return to logical IOCS.

r				
La	bel LBRE	T 2		
1		-4		
i	SVC	19	Return to logical IOCS.	

Label LBR	ET 3		7
	11,1	Put negative value in register 1.	1

Function: The LBRET (LaBel RETurn) macro instruction provides the return from:

- Your routine for the processing of additional user labels or nonstandard labels that you want to check or write.
- Your routine for any examination or processing of extent information during the direct access open of a DASD file.

To return from a label processing routine (specified by the DTF entry LABADDR), issue the LBRET macro after each user's header or trailer label is processed. Tape files need an operand of 1 or 2, while DASD label routines use all three operands as required.

To return from an extent processing routine (specified by the DTF entry XTNTXIT), issue the LBRET macro after handling each extent. An operand of 2 passes the next extent to your routine. After processing the last extent, an operand of 1 signifies to LIOCS that all user extent processing has been completed.

Procedure for Tape and DASD Labels:

- Input Files. The LBPFT macro checks for an operand of 1. If one, the user label processing is terminated and any additional labels are skipped. If all the labels on an input file are to be processed, the LBRET 1 macro is not needed. That is, IOCS ends processing when the DASD end-of-file record or the tapemark is sensed.
- Output Files. LBFET 1 is required to return to logical IOCS when all user labels have been created and written. Otherwise, LIOCS terminates label processing after a maximum of 8 header or (where allowed) 8 trailer labels.

Operand 1 is invalid for tape input files that contain nonstandard labels (FILABL=NSTD).

Operand 2 (input file) returns to LIOCS after each additional user standard label has been checked. LIOCS makes the next label, if present, available for checking in the label input area. When IOCS senses the end of the label set (DASD end-of-file record or tapemark), it terminates label processing.

Operand 2 (output file) returns to LIOCS after each additional user standard label except the last has been built. LIOCS writes the label from the label output area and returns to the user's label routine to permit him to build his next label. LBRET 1 terminates the label set or it is terminated after 8 header or 8 trailer labels have been written.

For nonstandard tape labels, LIOCS branches to the user's label routine only once, and the problem program must read or write every required label before issuing LBRET 2 to return to LIOCS.

Procedure for DASD Extents: The LBRET macro checks for an operand of 2 to determine if the user desires any additional extents for examination. Control passes between LIOCS and the user's routine for each extent requested until an operand of 1 terminates extent processing for this file.

Operand 3 causes LIOCS to write an updated label onto a DASD input file. After writing the updated label, LBRET 2 procedures are followed.

Note: If register 15 is required in your routine, save the contents of it, and restore the contents before returning to LIOCS via the LBRET macro instruction.

LITE Macro

	Label	LITE	filename,PARAM	
1		L	10,=A (PARAM)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of user's 2-byte pocket light indicator.
1		•	15, 16 (1) 14, 16 (15)	Loads address of logic module. Branch to pocket light routine in the logic module.

 $\underline{Function:}$ The LITE macro turns on the 1275/1419 pocket lights specified by the problem programmer.

Note: The problem program must issue a DISEN macro before issuing a LITE macro.

<u>Procedure:</u> The IITE macro turns on the pocket lights that are specified by setting indicators (bits) in a 2-byte field identified in the macro operand. When all the specified pocket lights are turned on, control returns to the problem program at the next sequential instruction following the LITE macro expansion.

NOTE Macro

Label	NOTE	filename		1
!	L		Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of logic module. Branch to NOTE routine in logic module.	-

<u>Function:</u> The NOTE macro instruction retains the identification of a physical record just read or written in a specified file.

The user must ensure that the previous operation was completed satisfactorily by using the CHECK macro before issuing a NOTE. The record identification is placed in register 1.

<u>Procedure:</u> For a tape file, this routine loads the physical record count into register 1, and control returns to the user.

For DASD, register 1 is loaded with the four bytes identifying the cylinder, head, and record number (CCHR) or BBBn for control interval format, where:

BBB = physical Block Number of the Control interval and

n = the logical block number within the control interval.

If NOTE follows a WRITE macro, the unused space remaining on the track or control interval is loaded into register 0.

OPEN Macro

Label	OPEN	FILEA,FILEB,,FILEn	
IJJOXXXX	CNOP DC LA BAL	OF'0'	Initializes to fetch the TES processor. Register 0 points to the address of the DTF table for the first file in the file list. The second operand causes a branch to the SVC 2 instruction.
	DC DC	A (FILEA) A (FILEB) A (FILEn)	Start of the file list. (The file list contains the addresses of the DTF tables for all of the files specified in the operand of the OPEN macro.) Address of the DTF table for the last file specified in the OPEN macro operand.
• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ISVC	12	Fetches the TES processor, \$\$BOPEN.

N = Sequence number of a file (1, 2, 3, etc.), in the order it appears in the OPEN macro operand.

EN = N of the last file +1.

<u>Function:</u> The OPEN macro instruction activates each file in the problem program. The symbolic name of the logical file (assigned by the DTF header entry) is entered in the operand field of this instruction. Up to 16 files may be opened with an OPEN macro instruction by entering the filenames in the operand field. If physical IOCS is used, OPEN is required only when standard labels are to be checked or created.

<u>Procedure:</u> The OPEN macro instruction calls the TES processor, \$\$BOPEN, into the logical transient area. The monitor checks for the device type assigned to the file, and calls the appropriate device-oriented open logical transient. The tape, diskette, and DASD open transients do all processing required to check or create standard labels for their respective files. For devices other than magnetic tape, diskette, or DASD an indicator is set in the DTF table to show that these files have been opened.

OPENC Macro

Label	OPENC	SYSXXX1,SYSXX	SYSXXX ¹ , SYSXXX ² ,SYSXXXn		
	LA	11,=C'\$\$BOPENC	' Loads name of B-transient.		
* * *	BAL	0, IJJOXXXX	Branch to fetch B-transient.		
* .	DC	AL1(class) 1	[Logical unit class for SYSxxx1.		
27	DC	AL1 (number) 1	Logical unit number for SYSxxx1.		
	DC	[AL1(class)2	Logical unit class for SYSxxx2.		
	DC	[AL1(number) ²	Logical unit number for SYSxxx2.		
•	1 -	<u> </u>			
	i.	İ			
	DC	[AL1 (class) n	Logical unit class for last SYSxxx in list.		
	DC	[AL1(number) n	Logical unit number for last SYSxxx in list.		
IJJOXXXX	SVC	12	Fetches phase \$\$BOPENC.		

<u>Function:</u> The OPENC macro instruction determines if a physical device is assigned to more than one of the symbolic units specified in the macro operand. A maximum of 16 symbolic units can be checked with a single macro instruction.

<u>Procedure:</u> The OPENC macro instruction calls the logical transient, \$\$BOPENC, which checks each symbolic unit specified in the macro operand in turn. \$\$BOPENC determines the PUB entry address specified in the LUB for the corresponding symbolic unit, and compares it to the PUB entry addresses of each of the remaining symbolic units in the macro operand. If an equal comparison results between the PUB addresses of any two symbolic units, an error message is printed and the job is canceled.

OPENR Macro

Label	OPENR	FILEA,FILEB,,FILE	in the state of th
	CNOP LA MVI L SR	10,4 10F'0' 11,IJJOxxxx+4 1*-4,X'58' 10,IJJOxxxx+4 11,0	 Loads actual location address. Disable subsequent relocation. Loads relocation factor. Finds displacement value.
	L AR ST 	0,IJJOxxxx+4+4*N 0,1 0,IJJOxxxx+4+4*N	Gets address of DTF table for file to be opened. Adds displacement value. Returns new DTF table address to file list. Captured three instructions listed are repeated for each file specified in the OPENR macro operand starting with FILEA.
IJJOXXXX	LA CNOP BAL	11,=C'\$\$BOPENR' 10,4 10,*+8+4*(&N-1)	Initializes to fetch \$\$BOPFNR. Register 0 points to the address used for relocation. The second operand causes a branch to the SVC 2 instruction.
	DC DC DC DC DC DC DC	A(*) A(FILEA) A(FILEB) A(FILED)	Address used by OPENR for relocation. Start of file list. (The file list contains ADCONS for the addresses of the DTF tables for all the files specified in the operand of the OPENR macro.) ADCON for last file in file list.
	 SVC	12	Fetches \$\$BOPENR.

FILEn = Symbolic address of the DTF table for the last file specified in the operand of the OPENR macro.

N = Sequence number of a file (1, 2, 3, etc.), in the order it appears in the OPENR! macro operand.

EN = N of the last file +1.

<u>Function:</u> The OPENR macro instruction activates files used by self-relocating programs. In addition to the basic function performed by the OPEN macro, the OPENR macro relocates all the address constants within the DTF tables for the files specified in the operand field. A maximum of 16 files can be specified in the operand of a single OPENR macro instruction.

<u>Procedure:</u> The CPENR macro instruction calls the logical transient \$\$BOPENR to perform the relocation of the DTF table address constants for each individual file. After the DTF address constants for all the files specified in the macro operand have been relocated, \$\$BOPENR calls the TES processor (\$\$BOPEN), then the Open Monitor (\$\$BOPEN1) to perform the actual open function. After all the specified files are opened, control returns to the problem program.

POINTR Macro

Labe	1 POINT	F filename, PARAM		1
	L L L BAL	1,=A(filename) 0,=A(PARAM) 15,16(1) 14,16(15)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of field containing record identification. Loads address of logic module. Branch to POINTR routine in logic module.	

Function: The PCINTR macro instruction repositions the file to read a magnetic tape or DASD record previously identified by a NOTE macro instruction.

Procedure: If the file is on tape, this routine spaces tape either forward or backward until the block count in the DTF table reaches the value provided as a parameter of the POINTR macro. Then the file is backspaced so the record may be read.

For DASD files, the POINTR macro instruction logic flow is the same as POINTW except track space is not considered. The POINTR macro is only used with IBM disk devices.

POINTS Macro

١	Label POINT	Sifilename		1
1-1-1	L L I BAL	1,=A (filename) 15,16(1) 14,24(15)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of logic module. Branch to POINTS routine in logic module.	

Function: The PCINTS macro instruction repositions a magnetic tape or DASD file to the beginning of the file.

Procedure: For a magnetic tape file, a POINTS macro instruction rewinds the tape associated with the filename. If any header labels are present, they are bypassed on the next READ or WRITE instruction. The tape is positioned to the first data record following the label set.

For a DASD file, a POINTS macro instruction positions the file to the lower limit of the first extent. The first record on the file is read or written when the next READ or WRITE macro instruction is issued for the file.

POINTW Macro

Label	LIPOINT	W filename,PARAM	Loadss address of field containing record identification. Loads address of logic module.
	L	1,=A (filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
	L	0,=A (PARAM)	Loadss address of field containing record identification.
	L	15,16(1)	Loads address of logic module.
	BAL	14,20(15)	Branch to POINTW routine in logic module.

Function: The POINTW macro instruction repositions the file to write a magnetic tape or DASD record following the one previously identified by a NOTE macro instruction.

Procedure: If the file is on magnetic tape, this routine spaces tape either forward or backward until the block count in the DTF table reaches the value provided as a parameter of the POINTW macro.

For a DASD file, the DASD address of the record to be written is calculated. The POINTW routine determines if the record can be contained in the same extent used by the preceding record (the preceding record is the one identified by the NOTE macro). If not, the Sequential DASD Open routine is called to open the required extent. When the correct extent is obtained, the CCW seek address is modified and the space remaining on the extent is updated in the DTF table. Control then returns to the problem program.

PRTOV Macro

Label	PRTOV	filename,CHAN,	routine*
! !	L	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
	•		Loads address of user's overflow routine if specified. *
	L	115,16(1)	Loads address of logic module.
	OI	21(1),1	Sets channel 9 bit in DTF table if CHAN is 9; otherwise, channel 12 assumed. **
	BAL	114,4(15)	Branch to PRTOV routine in logic module.

- * Optional
- ** Only if CHAN=9

<u>Function:</u> The PRTOV (PRinTer OVerflow) macro instruction specifies the operation to be performed when an overflow condition is reached on a printer. Whenever this macro instruction is to be issued in a problem program, the DTFPR or the DTFSR entry PRINTOV must be included in the file definition.

<u>Procedure:</u> The program performs the functions specified by the problem programmer. That is, skip to channel 1 on a 9 or 12, or perform his own functions when a 9 or 12 is sensed. If skip to channel 1 on a 9 or 12 is desired and a 9 or 12 is sensed, skip to channel 1 is placed in the CCW chain. Then, an SVC 0 executes the skip and resets the channel 9 and 12 indicators.

If a user routine is specified in the macro instruction, the problem programmer may issue any logical IOCS macro instructions (except another PRTOV) in his routine to perform whatever functions are desired. For example: print total lines, skip to channel 1, and print overflow page headings. The user routine must return to LIOCS by a branch to the address in register 14. Logical IOCS supplies this address upon entry to the user's routine. Therefore, if LIOCS macros are used in the routine or if register 14 is used, the return address must be saved.

PUT Macro

Label	PUT	filename,PARAM,	control*
! !	L	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
	L L L	0, = A (STLSP) 0, = A (STLSK) 0, = A (PARAM)	Loads address of control field, if control = STLSP. * Loads address of control field, if control = STLSK. * Loads address of work area, if specified. *
	OI	48(1),X'80'	Sets indicator in DTF table if control = STLSK. *
	L BAL	115,16(1) 114,12(15)	Loads address of logic module. Branch to PUT routine in logic module.
	NI	48(1),X'7F'	Resets control = STLSK indicator in DTF table. *

* Optional

Function: This instruction writes or punches logical records that have been built directly in the output area or in a specified work area. It is for any output file in the system (except work file), and for any type of record: blocked or unblocked, spanned or unspanned, fixed or variable length, and undefined. It operates much the same as GET but in reverse. It is issued after a record is built.

Similar to GFT, the PUT macro instruction is written with one or two parameters, depending on the area where the records are built. Either form, but not both, can be used for one specified logical file. If records are built directly in the output area (s), the PUT macro instruction requires only one parameter. This parameter specifies the name of the file to which the record is to be transferred. The filename must be the same as the one specified in the DTF entry for the file.

The second parameter is optional and if used, specifies the address (or a register containing the address) of the work area. This parameter is used if records are to be built in a work area defined by the user. The second parameter causes the PUT routine to move each logical record from the work area to the output area.

A third (optional) parameter, CONTROL=, is included in the macro operand for files assigned to printers with the Selective Tape Lister (STL) feature.

<u>Procedure:</u> Two output areas permit an overlap of data transfer and processing operation. Whenever two output areas are specified, the LIOCS routines transfer records alternately from each area (except for combined files). The LIOCS routines completely handle the switching of I/O areas so that the proper area is available to the program for the next sequential cutput record.

If a work area is specified, the output record is moved from the work area to the output area.

With blocked files specified, it is not necessary to transfer information from main storage to the output device on each PUT instruction. Only if the logical record is the last record of a block is it necessary to transfer a physical record to the output device. If overlap is possible, the transfer of information need not be completed before another PUT requiring data transfer is issued. When overlap is not possible, the transfer of data must be completed before another PUT is issued.

Tests are made for unusual conditions, which include: end of reel, wrong length record, irrecoverable error, no record found, etc.

PUTR Macro

Label	PUTR	filename,workout*,workinp*		
	ļL	1,=A(filename)	Loads address of DTF table.	
	L L		Loads address of output work area. * Loads address of input work area. *	
1	OI L BAL	115, 16 (1)	Set action message indicator in CCB. Load address of logical module. Branch to PUTR routine in logic module.	

* Optional

 $\underline{\text{Function:}}$ The PUTR (PUT with Reply) macro handles action messages that appear on the screen of the Display Operator Console. PUTR used with the 3210 or 3215 performs the same functions as a PUT followed by a GET. Moreover, the message non-deletion code for the Display Operator Console is then provided.

Procedure: The PUTR macro is issued after a record has been built. It processes fixed-length records only. The PUTR macro is written with either one or three parameters, depending on the area in which the records must be built. Either form, but not both, can be used for a logical file. If the records are built in the I/O area, only the <u>filename</u> parameter is required. If the records are to be built in a user-specified work area, both workout and working must be specified. In this case, the record is moved from the work area to the I/O area. In the case of overlap, information transfer need

not be completed before the next PUTR requests new data to be transferred. If overlap is not possible, the next PUTR must wait for the completion of the previous PUTR. Tests are made for unusual conditions such as end-of-reel, wrong length record, irrecoverable error, no record found, etc.

PUTR sets bit 5 of byte 3 in the CCB to '1' to indicate an action message; it then passes control to logical IOCS, which executes a PUT immediately followed by a GET.

RDLNE Macro

Label RDLNE	filename	
i il	1,=A (filename) 15,16(1) 14,4(15)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of logic module. Branch to RDLNE routine in logic module.

<u>Function:</u> The RDLNE macro provides selective online correction when journal tapes are being processed on an IBM 1287 Optical Reader. This macro reads a line in the online correction mode while processing is in the offline correction mode.

<u>Procedure:</u> If the reader cannot read a character, logical IOCS retries the line containing the unread character. If still unsuccessful, the user is informed of the condition via his error correction routine (specified in the DTFOR COREXIT entry). The RDLNE macro causes another attempt to read the line. If the character in the line cannot be read during this attempt, the character is displayed on the 1287 display scope. The operator may key in the correct character, if possible. If the defective character cannot be readily identified by the operator, he may enter a reject character in the error line. This condition is posted in byte 80 of the DTF table for user examination. Wrong length records and lost line conditions are also posted to byte 80 of the DTF table. RDLNE should be used in COREXIT only; otherwise the line following the one in error will be read in online correction mode.

The macro requires only one parameter, the symbolic name of the file from which the record is to be retrieved. This name is the same as that specified in the DTFOR header entry for this file. The filename can be specified as a symbol or in special or ordinary register notation.

READ Macro

Label	READ	filename, TYPE, PARAM, length	
an an an an an an an an an an an an an a	L L L	1,=A (filename) 0,=A (PARAM) 15,16(1)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of input area. Loads address of logic module.
	BAL	14, 28 (15)	If TYPE=ID. *
	BAL	114,24(15)	If TYPE=KEY. *
	BAL	114,0 (15)	If TYPE=MR. *
IJJRSYSNDX	i	14, IJJRSYSNDY+10 0,4(15)	Loads return address for TYPE=SQ. Branch to READ routine in the logic module if TYPE=SQ.
	DC DC	A(PARAM) H'length'	Address of input area. Length of record to be read.

^{*} Portion of macro expansion determined by TYPE= parameter.

Function: The RFAD macro instruction causes part or all of the next sequential physical record (or the next logical block for control interval format) to be read from the file associated with the filename into the area of storage indicated. If the file is on a 3886 Optical Character Reader, the storage area is indicated in the DTF.

Procedure: The READ macro instruction must always be followed by either a CHECK macro (MICR and work files) or a WAITF macro (DAM, ISAM, and 3886 files) to ensure the completion of the READ instruction.

The read logic sets up the channel program, modifies the CCW, inserts the address and number of bytes to be read, and issues an SVC 0. For control interval format the READ may not cause physical I/O.

The read logic does not provide for deblocking of records. If the user wishes to use blocked records, he must provide this function in the problem program.

RELEASE Macro -- Dynamic Device Release

Lab	el RELEA:	SE SYSXXX,	
	STM LA BAL SVC LM SVC	0,1,SAVE 1,=C'\$\$BRELSF' 0,*+4+6 2 0,1,SAVE 14	Saves registers 0 and 1. Loads address of transient. Branches to fetch and skip table. Fetches \$\$BRELSE. Restores registers 0 and 1. Normal end of job.

Function: This macro releases a unit table as specified by the problem program and fetches \$\$BRELSE.

The 'savearea' parameter is optional. If it is provided, it should be the name of an 8-byte area where registers 0 and 1 are saved for the user. If it is not provided, the contents of registers 0 and 1 are destroyed.

Procedure: The macro checks all of the units provided in the operand sublist to assure that no system logical units are requested for release. If system logical units are specified, an MNOTE is issued and the unit is ignored.

After all checking is done, a unit table is set up, register 0 is loaded with the table address, and \$\$BRELSE is fetched. If the 'savearea' option is specified, registers 0 and 1 are saved, and code is generated to restore them after the transient returns control to the RELEASE macro.

RELSE Macro

Lab	el RELSE	filename	
	L	1,=A (filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
	L	15,16(1)	Loads address of logic module.
	BAL	14,4(15)	Branch to RELSE routine in logic module.

<u>Function:</u> The RFLSE (release) macro instruction is used in conjunction with blocked input records. It allows the programmer to skip the remaining records in a block. If the record spans multiple physical blocks, the entire logical spanned record is bypassed. Processing continues with the first record of the next block when the next GET macro instruction is issued.

<u>Procedure:</u> The GET routine is modified to make the current record being processed look like the last record of the block. With this indication, the next GET transfers information from the input device to main storage and makes the first record of the new block available to the problem program.

RESCN Macro

Labe	1 RESCN	filename,r1,r2	
1	IL ILA	1,=A (filename)	Loads address of DTF table.
İ	I M V C	188(8,1),0(r2) 196(16,1),0(r1)	Puts Load Format CCW for reference mark in DTF table. Puts Load Format CCW for field to be read in DTF table.
İ	IL	(15,16(1) (14,16(15)	Loads address of logic module. Branch to RESCN routine in logic module.

<u>Function:</u> The RESCN macro provides the capability of rereading a field that has a defective character. This macro pertains only to the document mode and rereads into the portion of IOAREA1 corresponding to the original read. Online correction can also be forced by this macro.

The macro requires from three to five parameters. The first parameter specifies the symbolic name of the 1287D file given in the DTFOR header entry for the file. The second parameter specifies a general purpose register (2-12) which must contain the address of the Load Format CCW giving the document coordinates for the field to be read. The third parameter specifies a general purpose register (2-12) that must contain the address of the Load Format CCW giving the coordinates of the reference mark. The fourth parameter specifies a number (n), which is the number of retries to be given. The fifth parameter specifies one more retry with forced online correction. This parameter must be the letter F.

<u>Procedure:</u> When a character cannot be read, logical IOCS retries the line containing the unread character. If the character still cannot be read, the user is informed of the condition in his error correction routine specified in the DTFOR COREXIT entry. The user can then issue the RESCN macro to reread the field with the unreadable character. If the character still cannot be read, it is retried up to nine times depending on what the user specified. If the error still exists on the last retry, online correction is forced if the user specified this.

SEOV Macro

1	Label	SEOV	filename		
	į į	LA L S V C		Loads name of B-transient. Saves filename for B-transient phase. Fetches phase \$\$BCEOV1.	

Function: The SEOV (System Units End-of-Volume) macro instruction allows automatic volume switching to occur if the reflective spot is reached on a magnetic tape output file assigned to either SYSLST or SYSPCH.

<u>Procedure:</u> An SEOV macro, issued after the physical end-of-volume has been detected on a tape file, fetches phase \$\$BCEOV1 to determine the file type, and to select the proper tape close routine. The selected tape close routine performs the appropriate close functions and determines if an alternate tape is available. If an alternate tape is available, it is opened and made ready for processing.

SETDEY Macro

Label	SETDEV	/ filename,phasen	na me
	LR L	1=A (filename) 0,*+12 CL8'phasename' 0,r 15,16(1) 14,16(15)	Loads address of the DTF table. Generated if the phasename is an actual phasename. If phasename is specified in a register (r) other than register 0. Loads address of logic module. Branch to SETDEV routine in logic module.

Function: The SFTDEV (SET DEVice) macro instruction loads a format record into the 3886 Optical Character Reader.

Procedure: The SETDEV macro generates code which sets up parameters and branches to the 3886 logic module. The logic module gets the format record from the core image library and loads it into the 3886 device control unit.

SETFL Macro

Label SE	TFL filename	
L	1,=C'\$\$E	ename) Loads address of DTF table (DTFIS Load). SETFL' Loads name of B-transient.
S V LR	C 2 1,0	Fetches phase \$\$BSETFL. Saves address of DTF table for the problem program.

 $\underline{\text{Function:}}$ The SETFL (SET File Load mode) macro instruction sets up the ISAM file so that the load function can be performed.

Procedure: The SETFL macro instruction preformats the last track index of each cylinder of a file with zero entries, and initializes for a WRITE. Control then returns to the problem program.

SETL Macro

Label	SETL	filename, PARAM			
IJJS&SYSNDX	BAL	PARAM(1), IJJS&SYSNDY+8 1,=C'\$\$BSETL' 0,*+12 A(filename)	Saves parameter. Loads name of B-transient. Branch to fetch B-transient. Address of DTF table.		
	i	A (PARAM(1)) CL4'PARAM'	Address of field containing starting (or lowest) reference if PARAM=ID name. * If PARAM = BOF, KEY, or GKEY. *		
	SVC L	2 1,IJJS&SYSNDX+4	Fetches phase \$\$BSETL. Loads address of DTF table.		

*Optional

<u>Function:</u> The SETL (SET Limits) macro instruction initiates the mode for sequential retrieval and initializes the ISAM routines to begin retrieval at a specified starting address.

<u>Procedure:</u> If KFY is specified in the DTFIS table, the SETL routine searches the indexes to find the track and record address of the keyed record. The GET/PUT constants are initialized to begin with the address of the keyed record. When BOF (beginning of the file) is specified, SFTL initializes the GET/PUT logic to begin retrieval with the first record in the file. If ID is specified in the DTF, the GET/PUT logic is initialized to start with the record in the prime data area corresponding to the specified ID.

TRUNC Macro

Label TRUNC	filename	7
L L BAL	1,=A(filename) Loads address of DTF table. 15,16(1) Loads address of logic module. 14,20(15) Branch to TRUNC routine in logic module.	

<u>Function:</u> The TRUNC (TRUNCate) macro instruction is used with blocked output records. It allows the programmer to write a short block of records. (Blocks do not include padding.) Thus, the TRUNC macro is used for a function similar to the RELSE (release) instruction for input records, but in reverse. That is, when the end of a group of logical records is reached, that block is written and a new group is started at the beginning of a new block.

<u>Procedure:</u> If (as a result of the previous PUT) the block has already been transferred to the output device, the TRUNC macro requires no additional handling. If physical I/O is needed, the PUT routine is modified to handle the truncated record. Control then returns to the problem program.

WAITF Macro

Label	WAITF filename1,filename2,filenamen					
 IJJW&SYSNDX		SYSLIST(n,1), IJJWESYSNDX+n*4 1,=A(filenamen) 15,16(1) 14,4(15) A(SYSLIST(n))	Stores end of list code, n+1, in last entry in file list. Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of logic module. Branch to WAITF routine in logic module. Address of file list.			

n = a maximum of 16 files can be specified in the macro operand.

Function: The WAITF macro tests the condition of MICR device(s) and tests for I/O complete when used with DAM or ISAM files.

Procedure: For MICR files, if any one of the devices tested is operative and ready (that is, has records or error conditions to be processed), control returns to the problem program at the next sequential instruction following the macro expansion. On the other hand, if all the devices tested are not operational (that is, they are all waiting for documents to process), the system enters the wait state.

For DAM or ISAM files, the WAITF macro makes the system enter the wait state until a previously started I/O operation is complete.

Note: Only that partition in which the device(s) tested is operating enters the wait state. This allows processing to continue in another partition.

WRITE Macro

Label	WRITE* filename,TYPE,PARAM						
	L L L	1,=A (filename) 0,=A (PARAM) 15,16(1)	Loads address of DTF table. Loads address of output area. Loads address of logic module.				
	BAL	14,32(15)	Branch to WRITE routine in logic module if TYPE=SQ. **				
[BAL	(14,28, (15)	Branch to WRITE routine in logic module if TYPE=UPDATE. **				

- * For RECFORM = FIXUNB.
- ** Optional

Function: The WRITE macro instruction writes a record from the indicated area in main storage to the file associated with the file name.

Procedure: The WRITE macro sets up the channel program, modifies the CCW command code to write, inserts the address and number of bytes to be written, and issues an SVC 0. For control interval format, physical I/O may or may not occur.

The write logic does not provide for blocking of records. If the user wishes to block records, he must provide for it in the problem program.

The WRITE macro instruction must always be followed by either a CHECK macro (work files) or a WAITF macro (DAM and ISAM files) to ensure the completion of the WRITE instruction before another instruction is issued.

Example of a GET Macro

For this example of a GET macro (see Figure 6), assume that both the DTF table and the logic module were assembled separately, the GET macro expansion generated by the assembler, and symbolic addresses resolved by the linkage editor. IJFFZZZ (symbolic address) is generated as the name of the logic module and is included in the DTF table because of certain parameters specified in both the MTMOD and DTFMT macro instructions.

At object time, when the GET macro and its expansion are encountered, the starting address of the DTF table symbolized by the name OLDMSTR is loaded into general register 1, which serves as a base register for the DTF table. The next instruction in the GET macro expansion loads the contents of bytes 16-19 of the DTF table into general register 15 (bytes 17, 18, and 19 of any DTF table always contain the V-type ADCON for the logic module). This retrieves the address of the required logical IOCS data handling module. The third instruction in the GET macro expansion stores the address of the next sequential instruction (NSI) of the problem program in return register 14 and causes a branch to the logic module.

An assembly listing of the IJFFZZZZ logic module shows a branch instruction (B IJFFGFT) eight bytes from the start of the module. When the BAL instruction in the GET macro expansion passes control to this point in the logic module, the branch instruction passes control to the GET routine.

The GET routine determines which of the I/O areas is available (in this case, IOAREA1), and inserts the address (IOAREA0) of that I/O area into the CCW. The GET routine, using the CCB contained in the DTF table (the address of the CCB is loaded into general register 1 by the first instruction in the GET macro expansion) issues an SVC 0 for the device assigned to SYS001. The resulting physical I/O operation makes the next record in the OIDMSTR file available to the problem program in location IOAREAO. After ensuring that the physical I/O operation and the transfer of data is complete, control returns to the next sequential instruction (NSI) in the problem program via a branch to the address stored in general register 14.

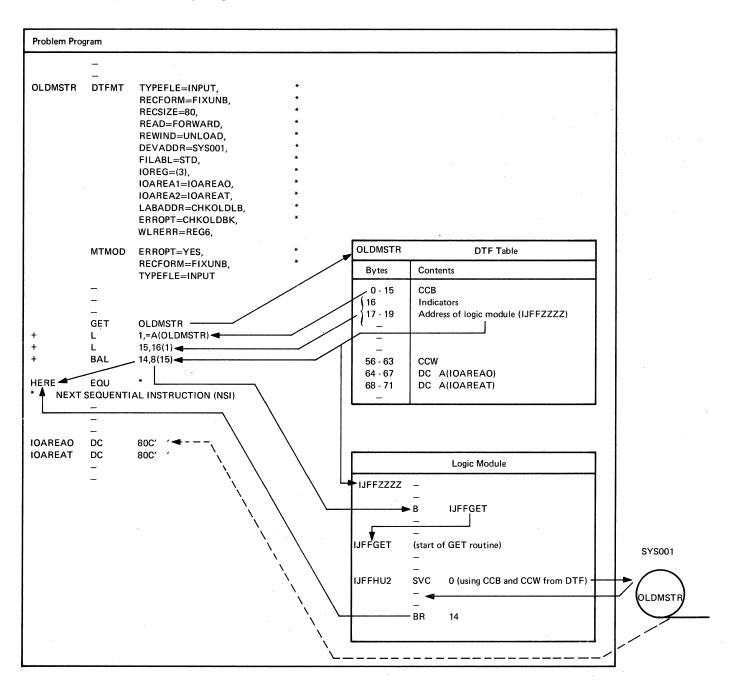


Figure 6. Example of a GET Macro

FILE INITIALIZATION AND TERMINATION

File initialization and termination routines open files required by the problem programmer, and close the files when they are no longer needed. These routines, called into the B-transient (logical transient) area by the corresponding OPEN and CLOSE macros, consist of:

- 1. TES Processor (\$\$BOESTV).
- 2. Open Monitor (\$\$BOPEN, \$\$BOPEN1, \$\$BOPEN2, \$\$BOPEN4, and \$\$BOPLBL).
- Close Monitor (\$\$BCLOSF, \$\$BCLOS2, \$\$BCLOS3, \$\$BCLOS4, \$\$BCLRPS, and \$\$BCLLBL).
- 4. EOF/EOV Monitor (\$\$BCFOV1).
- Device or file-processing method oriented open and close transients.

OPEN ROUTINES CHARTS 01-04

The open routine opens each file needed in the problem program. Up to 16 files can be opened with each OPEN macro instruction by entering their filenames as parameters.

To open a particular file, the Open Monitor (Chart 02) examines the DTF table specified by the filename to determine the file type and/or the file processing method. This information is obtained from byte 20 of the DTF table. Figure 2 summarizes these DTF type codes. In addition, the Open Monitor performs some initialization and checking, and reads any necessary label information into main storage. The Open Monitor then calls the appropriate open transient(s) to handle the file open.

<u>Unit Record and 3881 Optical Mark Reader Files</u>

When opening unit record devices (readers, punches, consoles, printers, paper tapes, and the 3881 Optical Mark Reader), the Open Monitor calls \$\$BOUR01 to determine if the device is in the ready condition. If the device is ready, the open indicator in the DTF table is set to a 1 (bit 0 of byte 21) to indicate the file is open.

The Open Monitor calls \$\$BOMRCE if the device is a 3505 with OMR and RCE or a 3525 with RCE.

Magnetic Ink Character Recognition Files

When opening MICR type devices (IBM 1255, 1259, 1270, 1275, and 1419), the Open Monitor calls \$\$BOMR01, which clears the document buffer area and initializes the document buffer pointer within the DTF. The address of the DTF is inserted into the correct entry of the supervisor PDTABB table. The unit exception bit in the CCB is turned on, and the device address is calculated and moved into the DTF. The OPEN indicator in the DTF table is set to indicate that the file is open.

Optical Reader Files (Except 3881)

When opening the IBM 1287 Optical Reader, the Open Monitor calls \$\$BOOR01, which determines if the device is ready, and if so, further determines if a header is to be read (HEADER=YES specified in the DTF). If it is, the open routine waits for the operator to manually key in a header. When the header has been read, the OPEN indicator in the DTF table is set to 1 to indicate that the file is open.

When opening the 3886 Optical Character Reader file, the Open Monitor calls \$\$BOOR01, which determines if the device is ready and if so, loads a format record from disk into the format area of the DTF. If the length of the format record is found to be within the required limits, it is loaded into the 3886 control unit. If no errors occur on the load, the open bit in the DTF is set on and control is returned to the Open Monitor. If the format record length is incorrect or if an error occurs on the load, the open routine is canceled by an illegal SVC.

Magnetic Tape Files

When opening magnetic tape files, the Open Monitor checks the label set and determines which of the magnetic tape open transients is needed. The required transient (see Chart 03) is then fetched to complete the open.

DASD Files

When opening DASD files, the Open Monitor checks the label information to determine the type of processing used for the file: SAM, DAM, ISAM, or VSAM. The monitor then calls the appropriate transient to complete the open. If an ISAM DTF is linked with a VSAM file, IIPOPEN is called.

<u>Diskette Files</u>

When opening diskette files, the Open Monitor checks the DTF type code (byte 20 of the DTF table) and the device code (byte 29 of the DTF table) to determine if the Diskette Input/Cutput Unit transients are needed. The monitor then fetches the appropriate transient to complete the open (see Charts 07 and 08).

CLOSE ROUTINES CHARTS 05, 06

The close routine closes any file that was previously opened in the system. Up to 16 files can be closed by each CLOSE macro instruction by entering their filenames as parameters.

Unit Record Files (Except MICR)

For unit record devices, the Close Monitor sets the close indicator in the DTF table (bit 0 of byte 21) to a 0 to indicate that the file is closed.

MICR (Magnetic Ink Character Recognition) Files

For MICR type files, the Close Monitor calls \$\$BCMR01 to complete the close function.

Magnetic Tape Files

For magnetic tape files, the close function is accomplished by logical transients called by either the Close Monitor (\$\$BCLOSE) or by the EOF/FOV Monitor (\$\$BCFOV1, Chart 06).

DASD Files

For DASD files processed by SAM the Close Monitor calls \$\$BOSFBL to link to the **\$IJJ**GTOP SVA phase to complete the close function. For DASD files processed by ISAM, the Close Monitor calls \$\$BCISOA to update and rewrite the format-1 and format-2 standard file labels, and to set the close indicator in the DTF table. If an ISAM DTF is linked with a VSAM file, ISCCLOSE is called. For DASD files processed by DAM, \$\$BCLRPS is called to free storage that was obtained for the DTF extension.

Diskette Files

For Diskette Input/Output Unit files, the Close Monitor calls \$\$BODIO4 to complete the close function.

FILE LABELING

VSE/Advanced Functions can identify and protect DASD, diskette, and magnetic tape files by recording labels on each volume (DASD pack, diskette, or magnetic tape reel). These labels ensure that the correct volume is used for input and that no current information is destroyed when a volume is used for output.

DASD, diskette, and magnetic tape files processed by logical IOCS must conform to certain standards regarding the use of labels. Although it is possible to process files with physical IOCS macros such as EXCP and WAIT, without processing labels, any file processed this way that is defined by a DTFPH macro must also conform to the same label standards established for files processed by logical IOCS.

The standard label set processed by logical IOCS includes one volume label for each volume, and one or more <u>file</u> labels for each logical file contained within the volume. Optional user labels can be included in the label set but these must be processed by an independent user routine. (Logical IOCS routines pass control to the user's label routine in the problem program if the LABADDR= parameter is specified in the file definition, DTF, macro.) Additional volume and file labels can also be included in the label set but these labels can only be processed by the user, and only if nonstandard labels are specified in the file definition macro.

User labels are not supported for diskette files.

Detailed information about the labels

can be found in the $\underline{\text{DASD}}$ and $\underline{\text{Tape}}$ labels books listed in the $\underline{\text{Preface}}$.

input files.

Creation of Tape Volume Labels

The IBM or American National Standards
Institute, Inc. standard volume label 1,
and any additional EBCDIC volume labels,
are written by an IBM-supplied utility
program at the time a reel is prepared for
use. The information in the standard
volume label is checked, but never altered,
during file processing. Logical IOCS
bypasses all additional volume labels when
building output files.

Standard Tape File Labels

Standard file labels are written before and after every logical file on a reel. These labels are referred to as file header labels or file trailer labels, depending on their position and use. They are always 80 bytes long and always have the same format and content, with the following exceptions:

- The label identifier field (bytes 1-3) contains:
 - a. HDR to indicate a header label (precedes the data file).
 - b. EOV to indicate an End-of-Volume (end of reel) trailer label (written at the end of a reel, indicating that the file is continued on another reel).
 - c. EOF to indicate an End-of-File trailer label (written at the end of the logical file).
- The block count field is used only in the EOF and EOV trailer labels. This field is set to zero in the HDR label.

Additional File Labels

Each standard file label (one header and one trailer) can be followed by up to seven additional file labels for EBCDIC tape files, or by up to eight additional file labels for ASCII tape files. The labels are 80 bytes long and must contain the label identifier HDR, EOV, or EOF in the first three bytes. The fourth byte should contain a character 2, 3,..., indicating the second, third,... and up to the last file label. These labels are not processed by LIOCS. If required, these labels must be written in the user's LABADDR routine by use of physical I/O macro instructions.

<u>User Header and Trailer Labels on Tape</u>

LIOCS bypasses additional header labels on

The user can include additional header and trailer labels to further define his file, if he desires. Each additional label in the set is 80 characters long. EBCDIC label identifiers are numbered from UHL1 and UTL1 through UHL8 and UTL8, maximum, for user header and trailer labels, respectively. American National Standards Institute, Inc., user header and trailer labels are identified by UHLa and UTLa, respectively, wherein "a" represents the range 2/0 through 5/14 except 2/7 (quotation mark). The remaining 76 characters can contain any information and arrangement desired by the user.

Tapemarks with Standard Tape Labels

The sequence of items on the tape that uses standard label sets is:

- No tapemark preceding the header label set.
- 2. Header label set:
 - a. Standard volume label (required).
 - b. Additional volume labels (0-7, optional: EBCDIC only).
 - c. Additional user volume labels (0-9, optional: American National Standards Institute, Inc., only).
 - d. Standard file header label (required).
 - e. Additional file labels (0-7, EBCDIC: 0-8, American National Standards Institute, Inc., optional).
 - f. User header labels (0-8, FBCDIC: or range 2/0-5/14 except 2/7, American National Standards Institute, Inc., optional).
- Tapemark between header label set and first data record.
- 4. Physical data records for file.
- Tapemark between last data record and trailer label set.
- 6. Trailer label set:
 - a. Standard file trailer label (required at end-of-file and end-of-volume).

- b. Additional file labels (0-7, FBCDIC: 0-8, American National Standards Institute, Inc., optional).
- User trailer labels (0-8, EBCDIC: range 2/0-5/14 except 2/7 (quotation mark), American National Standards Institute, Inc., optional).
- 7. Tapemark after trailer label set.
- 8. If multifile reel (EOF label), next standard file header label follows here. If single-file reel (EOF label) or if last file of a multifile reel, another tapemark follows here. multireel file (EOV label), one tapemark follows the EOV label on an EBCDIC file. Two tapemarks follow the EOV label on a multireel ASCII file.

Standard Tape Label Processing

Standard tape label processing is performed by the IIOCS transient label-processing (Open, Close, EOF/EOV) routines. These routines use the information supplied in the job control card (// TLBL) that was stored in the label information area in the resident volume.

The actual label processing consists of the following checks:

Tape Input File:

- The volume serial number in the standard volume label on the first or only reel is compared to the file serial number in the TLBL card. All other volume labels on all reels of the file are bypassed.
- The contents of the TLPL card are compared to the corresponding fields in the standard file header label on the first reel. Fields 1-10 are required. Fields 11-14 are optional. For successive reels of a multireel file, the volume sequence number (EBCDIC file) or file section number (ASCII file) is increased by 1 for each reel.
- If user labels are indicated, they are read into main storage by the open routine for processing by the user's label routines. The user labels are read one at a time, until all have been processed.
- When a standard file trailer label is read, the block count is compared to a count accumulated by IOCS.
- If user trailer labels are indicated, they are read into main storage by the close routine for processing by the user's label routine. The user trailer

labels are read one at a time until all have been processed.

Tape Output File:

- The volume serial number in the standard volume label on the first or only reel is compared to the file serial number in the // TLBL card. All other volume labels on all reels are bypassed.
- The expiration date in the standard file header label is checked against the today's date in the communications region. If the expiration date has passed, the reel is backspaced to write the new standard file label. If not, the operator is notified of the condition. This check is performed on each reel of a multireel output file. If no file label is present, the tape is considered expired. For an expired 9-track tape, the user-specified density is compared to the VOL1 density of the mounted tape. If a discrepancy is found, and if the tape is at load point, the volume label(s) is rewritten according to the user-specified density.
- The new standard file label is written with the information supplied in the // TLBL card. For multireel files, the volume sequence number (EBCDIC file) or file section number (ASCII file) is increased by 1 for each successive reel.
- If user header labels are indicated, the user's label routine is entered to furnish the labels as each reel is opened. This can be done for as many as eight user header labels per EBCDIC file and for an unlimited number of user header labels per ASCII file.
- If end of reel is sensed before completing the file, an EOV trailer label is written with all fields presented in the // TLBL card plus a block count.
- When end of file is reached, an EOF trailer label is written identical to the EOV label previously mentioned.
- If user trailer labels are indicated, the user's label routine is entered to furnish the labels after each trailer (EOV or EOF) label is written. This can be done for as many as eight user trailer labels for EBCDIC files and an unlimited number of trailer labels for ASCII labels.

NONSTANDARD TAPE LABELS

Any tape labels that do not conform to the standard label specifications are

considered nonstandard. Nonstandard labels are not supported in ASCII files. If nonstandard labels are to be read, checked, or written, it must be done by the user. On input files, the nonstandard labels may or may not be followed by a tapemark. Therefore, four conditions are possible:

- Nonstandard label(s), followed by a tapemark, to be checked.
- Nonstandard label(s), <u>not</u> followed by a tapemark, to be checked.
- Nonstandard label(s), followed by a tapemark, not to be checked.
- Nonstandard label(s), <u>not</u> followed by a tapemark, <u>not</u> to be checked.

For conditions 1 and 2, the DTFMT or DTFSR entries must specify nonstandard labels and the address of a user-written routine to do the reading or writing.

For condition 3, nonstandard labels must be specified, but the address of a user routine is omitted. IOCS skips all labels, passes the tapemark, and positions the tape at the first data record to be read.

For condition 4, nonstandard labels and a user address are specified. IOCS cannot distinguish labels from data records because there is no tapemark to indicate the end of the labels. Therefore, to position the tape at the first data record, the user must read all labels.

With nonstandard labels when an end-of-file or an end-of-volume condition exists, the user indicates to IOCS which condition it is. On end-of-file, IOCS branches to the user's end-of-file address. On end-of-volume, IOCS initiates the end-of-volume procedures to close the completed volume and open the next volume for processing.

On output files, nonstandard labels are written by the user's routine by using physical IOCS. The OPEN routine writes a tapemark between the user's nonstandard header labels and his first data record unless the DTF macro instruction has the entry: TPMARK=NO. The close routine writes a tapemark after the user's <u>last</u> data record before he writes his nonstandard trailer labels, and after the trailer labels.

Unlabeled Tape Files

The DTF macro instruction specifies whether the first record of an unlabeled file is a tapemark.

Unlabeled IEM FBCDIC <u>input</u> tape files may or may not have a tapemark as the first

record. (If the first record is not a tapemark, IOCS assumes it is a data record.) Any tape that is to be read backward may have a tapemark as the first record on tape. Unlabeled <u>output</u> tape files (written by IOCS) may be written with a tapemark as the first record. ASCII unlabeled tapes do not contain leading tapemarks. A read backwards operation is performed to load point for these files by special error recovery procedures.

Note: Seven-track tapes may be read backward only if they were written in EBCDIC, and they must not have been written in the conversion mode.

When an unlabeled output file is specified, the open routine assumes the mounted scratch tape is also unlabeled. No checking of expiration date is performed. Therefore, any existing labels, including the volume label, are destroyed.

<u>DASD Label Processing</u>

When a DASD file is processed by logical IOCS, the file must be opened before any transfer of data can be made. The open routines check the DASD labels identifying the file. The open routines also compare information from the actual file labels in the VTOC against the label information supplied by the user in job control cards, and stored in the label information area by job control.

Note: References made in this manual to the // DLBL and // EXTENT job control statements also apply to the // VOL, // DLAB, and // XTENT statements for the 2311, and 2314/2319.

The DTFSD and DTFSR routines process the labels of a sequential file (input or output) one volume at a time. For DTFSR, as each extent is checked, IOCS can pass control to a user's extent exit routine. When the end of the last extent on a volume is reached, an automatic open is issued for the next volume. The DTFDA and DTFIS routines require that all volumes be online for the initial OPEN. DTFPH can be used to process SAM or DAM files. The actual label processing consists of the following operations:

DASD Input Files:

- The volume serial numbers in the volume labels are compared to the volume serial numbers in the DLBL/EXTENT cards.
- The file identification, format identifier, and the file serial number in the format-1 label are compared to the corresponding fields in the DLBL card. The volume sequence number, the creation and expiration dates are then

checked against their EBCDIC equivalents in the DLBL card.

- Each of the extent definitions in the format-1 and format-3 labels is checked against the limit fields supplied in the EXTENT cards.
- If user header labels are indicated (when DTFSD, DTFSR, DTFPH, or DTFDA are used), they are read as each volume is opened. After reading each label, the open routine branches to the user's label routine to perform any processing necessary.
- If user trailer labels are indicated (when DTFSD or DTFSR are used), they are read after reaching the end of the last extent on each volume or an end-of-file read by logical IOCS. As with the user header labels, the trailer labels are processed by the user's routine.

<u>DASD Output Files:</u>

- The volume serial numbers in the volume labels are compared to the volume serial numbers in the DLBL/EXTENT cards.
- The extent definitions in all labels in the VTOC are checked to determine whether any extend into those defined in the EXTENT cards. If any do overlap, the expiration date is checked against the <u>current</u> <u>date</u> in the communication region. If the expiration date has passed, the old labels are deleted. If not, the operator is notified of the condition.
- The file names of all entries in the VTOC are compared with the filename in the DLBL statement. If a match is found with an expired file, the expired file is deleted. If a match is found with an unexpired file, the operator is notified.
- The new format-1 label is written with information supplied in the DLBL card. If an indexed sequential file is being processed, the DTFIS table supplies information for the format-2 label.
- The information in the EXTENT cards is placed in the format-1 labels, and (if necessary) additional format-3 labels.
- If user header labels are indicated (when DTFSD, DTFSR, DTFPH, or DTFDA are used), the user's label routine is entered to furnish the labels as each volume is opened. This can be done for as many as eight header labels per volume. As each label is presented, IOCS writes it out on the first track of the first extent of the volume.
- If user trailer labels are indicated (when DTFSD or DTFSR are used), the

user's label routine is entered to furnish the labels when the end of the last extent on each volume is reached. This can be done for as many as eight user trailer labels. As each label is presented, IOCS writes it out on the first track of the first extent of the volume. The CLOSE macro instruction must be issued to create trailer labels for the last volume of a file.

<u>Diskette Label Processing</u>

When a diskette file is processed by logical IOCS, the file must be opened before any transfer of data can be made. The open routines check the diskette labels (which identify the file) against the label information supplied by the user in the control cards (stored in the label information area by job control).

A diskette file can be identified by two job control statements: // DLBL and // EXTENT. When the extent limits on a volume are exhausted, an automatic open is issued for the next volume (for DTFDU and DTFPH). DTFPH can be used to process diskette files, feed the diskettes out for a multivolume file, and issue an open to get the new extent limits for the new diskette (both for input and for output).

<u>Diskette Input Files</u>

- The volume serial numbers in the labels are compared to the serial numbers in the DLBL/EXTENT cards.
- If 'file ID' is supplied on the DLBL card, then that file on the diskette is processed (if found). If 'file ID' is omitted, the DTF name is used.
- Both volume and file security label fields are examined and handled to ensure data integrity.
- All symbolic units specified in the EXTENT cards are checked to ensure that only one physical unit is being addressed. This is necessary to ensure that only one file is open on a diskette.
- The extent limits in the file label are checked for validity; if they are found to be correct, the DTF is initialized.
- For multivolume diskette input files using DTFDU, the extent cards and the multivolume indicator are used in conjunction by the OPEN transients to determine when end-of-file has occurred. If three extents were provided by the user, the following multivolume

indicator combination could occur:

Multivolume Indicator	Action by OPEN Transients
, anything	Process first volume and issue warning message.
L, anything	 No volumes are processed; issue permanent error message.
c,	Process first volume and lissue permanent error message.
C, x	Process first volume and Issue permanent error message because file not found.
C, L, anything	Process through the 'L' and issue warning message.
	 Process through the number of extents. No message.
	 Process through the 'L'. No message.

In summary, for DTFDU the number of diskettes can be less than the number of extents provided. For all other supported DTF's, processing continues until the number of extents is exhausted. Regardless of the

DTF type, for system files processing continues until all extents are exhausted.

<u>Diskette Output Files</u>

- The volume serial numbers in the labels are compared to the serial numbers in the DLBL/EXTENT cards.
- If 'file ID' is supplied on the DLBL card, it will become the name of the new file on the diskette. If 'file ID' is omitted, the DTF name is used.
- Extent limits are determined by OPEN; any expired files that are overlapped by the file to be created are deleted. The operator is informed of any overlap with an unexpired file.
- All file names are compared with the name of the file to be created. If a match is found with an expired file, the file is deleted. The operator is informed of a match with an unexpired file.
- The new HDR1 label is created and written back out onto the diskette.
- If a secured file is being created, the volume label is updated to indicate a secured volume.
- A CLOSE macro instruction must be issued to ensure that all records are written and to update the HDR1 label for the last volume of the file.

COMMON AND SPECIAL PURPOSE LOGICAL IOCS ROUTINES

This section contains detailed descriptions of certain routines generic to logical IOCS. In general, these routines cannot be related to a specific file type or file processing method. Describing LIOCS in four volumes has made it necessary to include details of these routines in Volume 1 even though they may relate to file processing described in other volumes.

Included in this section are:

- TES Processor (\$\$BOESTV)
- Open Monitor (\$\$BOPEN, \$\$BOPEN1, \$\$BOPEN2, \$\$EOPEN4, and \$\$BOPLBL)
- Close Monitor (\$\$BCLOSE, \$\$BCLOS2, \$\$BCLOS3, \$\$BCLOS4, \$\$BCLLBL, and \$\$BCLRPS)
- Open for self-relocating programs (\$\$BOPENR, and \$\$BOPNR2, and \$\$BOPNR3)
- RPS SVA initialization routine (\$\$BOPENS) and RPS phase loading routine (\$\$VOPENT).
- DASD File Protect and VTOC Display and Dump routines.
- DASD RPS Common Close (\$\$BCLRPS)
- Check Duplicate Device Assignments for Logical Units (\$\$BOPENC)
- Enqueue and Dequeue for VSE/VSAM Routines (\$\$PENDQB)
- SD Close Input and Output (\$\$BOSDC1)
- Close, Free Track Function (\$\$BOSDC2)
- Forced End of Volume for Disk (\$\$BOSDEV)
- Dequeue Extent JIBs (\$\$BODQUE)
- Device Release (\$\$BRELSE)

The Charts section contains the detailed flowcharts for each of the routines discussed.

\$\$BOESTV: Error Statistics by Tape Volume Charts FN-FO

Objective: For tape, record TES information from the PUB2 table onto SYSREC as applicable, post the new tape open, and pass control to the next transient.

Entry:

- From \$\$BOPEN1 or \$\$BPCP01 when tape unit ready.
- From \$\$BOPEN for job control tape OPEN.
- From a message writer routine to post OPEN and process new volume label.

Exit: To next transient.

Method: \$\$BOESTV tests the device type of the device to be opened. It does the following:

- 1. The tape label is read and compared with the label currently stored in the PUB2 table for that device.
- 2. Control is passed to the appropriate exit phase if the tape was previously opened.
- The tape open bit is posted, the volume serial number in the PUB2 table is saved, and control is passed to the appropriate exit phase if this is the first tape on the device.
- The tape open bit is posted and control is passed to the appropriate exit routine if the tape is unlabeled, there is no volume ID in the PUB2 table (the previous tape was also unlabeled), and individual recording was not specified.
- 5. The TES record is written onto SYSREC, the tape open bit is posted, and control is passed to the appropriate exit phase if the tape is unlabeled and either individual recording was specified or the previous tape was labeled.
- The TES record is written onto SYSREC, the tape open bit is posted, the new volume ID is stored in the PUB2 table, and the appropriate phase is fetched if the tape label read is different from the label in the PUB2 table.

\$\$BOPEN: Open Monitor Charts AA-AB

Objective:

Initialization of the Logical Transients Common Area and the Fetch RPS Initialization Routine.

Tape Error Recording Routine for Job Control open.

Entry:

- From an OPEN macro expansion in the problem program.
- From a successfully completed open routine.
- From the \$\$BCPENR or \$\$BOPNR2, DTF relocation routines.
- 4. From a message writer routine.
- From the open routine for DTFCP or DTFDI files.

Exits: To \$\$BOPEN1, \$\$BOESTV, and \$\$BOPENS.

Method:

- If RPS is not yet intitialized, \$\$BOPENS is fetched to do so.
- 2. \$\$BOPEN tests the device type of the device to be opened. If the device is a tape, the logical transients common area is initialized for tape open. If \$\$BOPEN was fetched by job control, an exit is taken to \$\$BOPENV to do recording. If the open is not for job control, \$\$BOPEN1 is fetched. If the device is not a tape, initialization of the logical transients common area takes place and \$\$BOPEN1 is fetched.

\$\$BOPEN1: Open Monitor Phase 1 Charts AE-AJ

Objective: To determine, initialize for, and fetch the proper open routine for DASD, diskette, magnetic ink character recognition (MICR), magnetic tape, optical reader, unit record, and telecommunications files.

Entry: From \$\$BOPEN, or return from another
logical transient.

Exits:

- To \$\$BOSFBL for DTF type code X'20' and X'21'.
- To \$\$BOPLBL, and then to \$\$BOPEN2 for standard labeled magnetic tape files or ISAM files.
- To \$\$B35400 for diskette files.
- To an appropriate open routine if other files are to be opened.
- To a message writer routine if an error has occurred.

- To the problem program if no more files are to be opened.
- To \$\$BOESTV for tape DTFs to do recording.

Method: The \$\$BOPEN1 phase begins the initialization of the open table located at the end of the logical transient area. open table is initialized for all file types and passes information to the successive open phases. Next, the type of entry into the \$\$BOPEN1 phase is determined. If entry was made directly from an OPEN macro, the monitor prepares to open the first file specified in the macro operand. If access control is in the system, the monitor links first to the access control module residing in the SVA. If entry was made from another open phase, the monitor prepares to open the next file specified in the macro operand. If entry to the \$\$BOPEN1 phase was from a message writer phase or from a device independent file (CP or DI) open phase, processing continues on the current file. At this point \$\$BOPEN1 checks whether the control block is a DTF or a VSAM ACB by testing the type code (byte 20 of the control block). If the code is "'28', the file being opened is a VSAM file with an ACB control block. In this case, phase \$\$BOVSAM is called. the code is anything other than Y'28', X'20', X'21', X'22', and X'23', \$\$BOPEN1 loads and branches to \$\$BOPIGN.

When \$\$BOPIGN returns control, \$\$BOPEN1 determines the type of file being opened from byte 20 of the DTF table. If an invalid file type is detected, message 4880I is printed and the job is canceled. The file type governs the functions that the open monitor must perform to open a particular file:

- Console (DTFCN) files are ignored.
- Unit record (DTFCD, DTFPR, and DTFPT), optical reader (DTFOR), magnetic ink character recognition (DTFMR), compiler (DTFCP), and basic telecommunication access method - extended support (BTAM-ES) files are checked to validate the address limits of the respective DTF tables and the proper open phase is fetched.
- Magnetic tape (DTFMT or DTFPH-MT) files are tested to determine whether they are:
 - work files,
 - nonstandard label or unlabeled files, or
 - standard label output or input forward or input backward.

From this information the name of the proper tape open routine is determined.

For output files with an IOREG specified by the user, \$\$BOPEN1 stores the address of IOAREA1 in the save area for that register. For the output and the standard label input files, \$\$BOPEN1 fetches \$\$BOPLBL, to GETVIS an area for the labels. \$\$BOPLBL then calls \$\$BOPEN2 of the Open Monitor. For nonstandard labeled tape files, \$\$BOPEN1 loads the user's IOREG, if specified, with the address of IOAREA1 and fetches the proper tape open phase directly.

For diskette files, \$\$BOPEN1 prepares to read sequential DASD labels from the label area into the logical transient area. \$\$BOPEN1 fetches diskette open phase, **\$\$**B35400, directly.

\$\$BOPEN4: DASD DTF DEV Type Update OPEN Phase Charts HG-HH

Objective:

- To locate the PUB for the DASD, using the corresponding LUB pointer.
- To test the PUB to make sure it is used for a 3340.
- To check the VOL ID to make sure that the corresponding 3340 is ready and the VOL ID is correct.

Entry: From \$\$BOPLBL and reentry from \$\$BOMSG1.

Exits: To \$\$BOPEN2 to continue OPEN processing for ISAM or to \$\$BOMSG1 for operator communication.

Method: The logical unit address in the
first type-1 label extent information of an ISAM file defines the correct size for all 3340 data modules containing prime data and/or overflow areas of an ISAM multivolume file. The logical unit address of the first (or only) type-4 label extent information defines the size of the 3340 data module containing the index area(s).

\$\$BOPIGN: Open Ignore Charts AL-AM

Objective: To check for the COBOL open ignore option.

Entry: From \$\$BOPEN1.

Exits:

- To \$\$BOPEN1 to continue opening the files.
- To \$\$BOMSG1 if an error occurs.

Method: \$\$BOPIGN determines if the COBOL open ignore option is specified for the file by testing bit 2 in byte 16 of the DTF table. If the bit is on, a second test determines if the file is either unassigned or assigned ignored. If this is the case,
the open for the file is bypassed, and control returns to \$\$BOPEN1 to open the next file. In all other cases, \$\$BOPIGN validates the address limits of the DTF table, and returns to \$\$BOPEN1 which continues opening the file.

\$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor, Phase 2 Charts AN-AQ

Objective: To read label information from the label area for standard labeled magnetic tape and DASD files, and to fetch the required open phase for the file being opened.

Entry: From \$\$BOPLBL, \$\$BOPEN4, or from a message writer phase (\$\$BOMSG1).

Exits:

- To \$\$BOESTV for standard labeled tape.
- To the required open phase determined by \$\$BOPEN1.
- To \$\$BOMSG1 if an error is detected.
- To phase IIPOPEN if an ISAM DTF is linked with a VSAM file.
- To phase \$\$BOCISC if CDLOAD for IIPOPEN was not successful.

Method: This phase of the Open Monitor reads the label information (stored by Job Control on the SYSRES label area) into the area obtained by \$\$BOPLBL through a GETVIS macro.

For magnetic tape files no checking is required, and the appropriate tape open phase (determined by phase \$\$BOPEN1) is set up to be fetched after recording has been done in \$\$BOESTV to provide the additional processing required to open the file.

IBM			IBM System/350 As	sembler Coding P	trm			X28~6509-3 U. M050 , Printed in U.S.A.
PROGRAM				PUNCHING	GRAPHIC			PAGE OF
PROGRAMMER			DATE	INSTRUCTIONS	PUNCH			CARD ELECTRO NUMBER #
	0		STATEMENT			Communit		Identification-
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	10 0,000,000	Operand 16 20 25	30 35 40	45	50	55 60	65	71 73 60
OLDMSTR	DTFMT	TYPEFLE = IMPUT	RECFORM=FIX	BLKABL	KSIZE	= 400, RECSI	ZE-80 >	X
		READ=FORWARDSR	EWIND-UNLOA	D ,	+++++			X
		TYPEFLE=INPUTS READ=FORWARDSR DEVADDR=SYSØØI	5					
		IOREG=(3), IOAREAI=AREAON LABADDR=CKOLDL ERROPT-CKOLDBL						
 		TOAREAL = AREADN	F.		111111	1111111	11111	T X
 		LARADDR = CVOLDL	AR.	HHH	 	-111111	++++++	
┠┧╏╏ ┼┼┼┼		E D D D T T C Y OU TO D	791 	 	++++	' 	 	
┡╄┼┼┼┼┼	┞╂┼╎┼╂	WLRERR=REG6,	N2	++++	+++++	- 	++++++	
1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 +	+++++	WLKERK-KEGO,		╏┤┤┤ ┼	++!+}		+++++	
	\square	EOFADDR=EOFMST	R	11111	 		111111	
START	CNOP	0,4			+ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$ $+$			
	BALR	12,0						
	US I NG	X 312		1				
	OPEN	OLDMSTR			ШШ			
					$\Pi\Pi\Pi\Pi$			
 	 			 	11111	- 	 	
} 	 . 	- 	 - - - - - - -	 	 		 	
} 	┞╏ ┼┼┼┼┼		 	 	11111	- } 	+++++	++++++++
	CLOCE	OLDMSTR	 	┞╎╎┊┦ ┼	+++++		 	++++++
		OLDMS I K	╏╏╏╏╏	+++++	+++++	-++++	+++++	
EOFCD	EOJ			H + H + H	++++++	-+++++++	++++++	
				HHH	+++++		$\bot \!$	

Figure 7. Sample OPEN DTFMT Macro Instruction

For ISAM files, \$\$BOPFN2 of the Open Monitor reads a single DLBL/EXTENT record. This record can contain more than one EXTENT card image. The DIBL label type indicator is checked. If it contains 'V', the file is a VSAM file. In this case the open-active indicator is reset and phase MIPOPEN is loaded using the CDLOAD function. IIPOPEN is part of the ISAM interface program, IIP. The user return address is stored from the user save area into the DTF. The file list pointer is stored into register 0 of the user's save area, control is given to IIPOPEN, and the B-transient area is released. If the DLBL label type indicator contains 'C' or 'F', indicating an ISAM file, the file type is checked against the DTF type. Then the DASD address limits of each extent are checked. Any extent errors cancel the job. When checking of the extent address limits is complete, \$\$POPEN2 fetches the appropriate open phase determined by \$\$BOPEN1.

Example of the Open Function

This example (see Figure 8) shows functions performed to open a magnetic tape data file with symbolic filename OLDMSTR.

Figure 7 shows a typical DTFMT macro instruction as it might appear in a problem program. The macro instruction causes the assembler to generate a corresponding DTF

table, a portion of which is included in Figure 8, for the file OLDMSTR (refer to Volume 2 for the detailed entries in the DTF table for magnetic tape data files). Three of the DTFMT macro parameters determine which magnetic tape open phase is required to open the file. They are:

- TYPEFLE=INPUT
- READ=FORWARD
- FILABL=STD

In addition to performing other functions, these parameters generate a X'14' in the type byte (byte 20) of the DTF table. This type code controls the procedure followed by the Open Monitor in selecting the proper open procedure. In this case, X'14' indicates to the Open Monitor that phase \$\$BOMT01 (Open Input Standard Labels, Forward) is needed to complete the open function for the file OLDMSTR.

The assembler generates the following expansion for the OPEN OLDMSTR macro instruction:

1	CNOP	0,4	-
i	LA	1,=C'\$\$BOPEN'	ĺ
Ì	BAL	O, IJJOESYSNDX	Ì
ı	DC	A (OLDMSTR)	ĺ
İ	SVC	2	ĺ
	1	LA BAL DC	LA 1,=C'\$\$BOPEN' BAL 0,IJJO&SYSNDX DC A (OLDMSTR)

- CNOP 0,4 is for boundary alignment.
- LA loads the address of the name of

^{*} A standard card form, IBM electro 6509, is available for punching source statements from this form.

phase 1 of the Open Monitor into register 1. This is used by the supervisor to call the Open Monitor.

- BAL causes a branch to the SVC 2 instruction and saves the address of the ADCON A (OLDMSTR), which provides linkage so the open routines can address the DTFMT table named OLDMSTR. It also serves as linkage to allow return to the problem program when the open routine issues a SVC 11.
- SVC 2 instructs the supervisor to call and branch to the TES processor,
 \$\$BOPEN. \$\$BOPEN creates the TES record for the previously processed magnetic tape unit and then writes the record on SYSREC.
- \$\$BOPEN then calls the Open Monitor,
 \$\$BOPEN1, that locates the address of:
 - The user's register save area in storage.
 - The label save area in storage.
 - The DTF table for the file OLDMSTR.

From byte 20 of the DTF table, \$\$BOPEN determines the DTF type (X'14') and initializes to fetch \$\$BOMT01 after \$\$BOPEN2.

\$\$BOESTV is called and executed. \$\$BOESTV creates the TES record for the previously processed magnetic tape and writes the record on SYSREC. Then \$\$BOPEN2 is called and executed.

Prior to \$\$BOPEN2, \$\$BOPLBL has checked if \$JOBACCT is active. If the job accounting interface is active, the label save area in the supervisor is used. \$\$BOPEN2 also searches the label area for the label information stored by job control for the file OLDMSTR. When this information is found, it is read into the label save area in main storage. \$\$BOPEN2 then fetches the tape open phase (\$\$BOMT01) determined by \$\$BOPEN1.

\$\$BOMT01 checks the actual tape labels against the label information in the label save area. If no errors are detected, this phase posts the file open in the DTF table (bit 5 of byte 36) and recalls \$\$BOPEN1 of the Open Monitor. The Open Monitor, in turn, returns control to the problem program. (In this example, only one file is specified in the operand of the OPEN macro. If the operand contains the names of more files, the Open Monitor opens the remaining files before returning control to the problem program.)

\$\$BOPLBL: Open Monitor Label Space Processor Chart AK

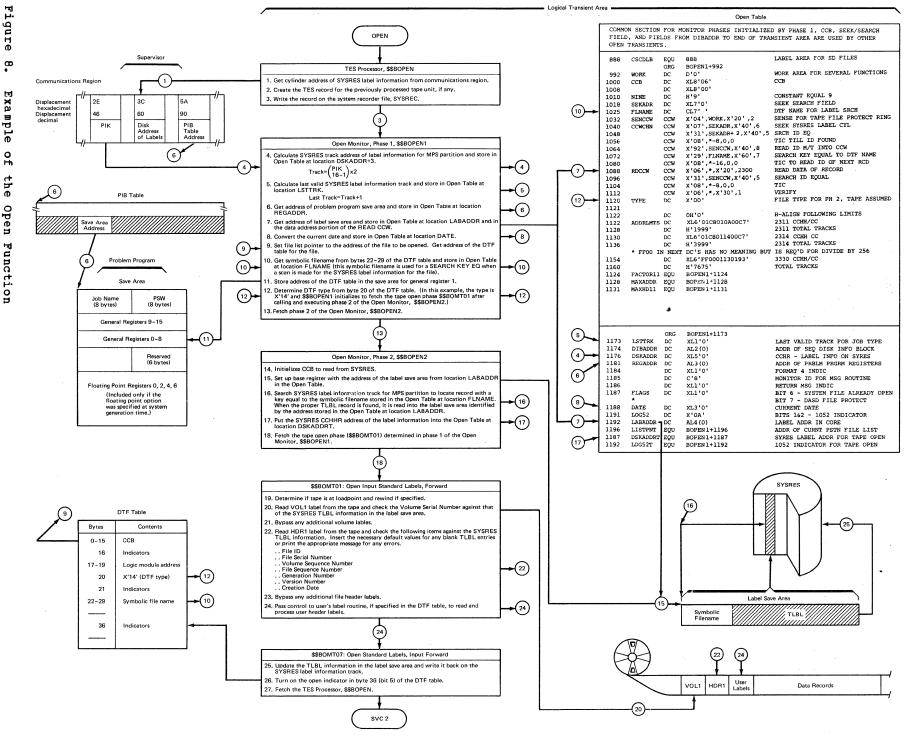
Objective: To determine the size of the read-in area required to process the DLBL/EXTENT and/or the TLBL information and to issue a GETVIS for the required space.

Entry: From \$\$BOPEN1.

Exit:

- To \$\$BOPEN2 for tape.
- To \$\$BOPEN4 for ISAM.
- To \$\$BOMSG1 if an error occurs.

Method: \$\$BOPLBL, at open time, builds a parameter list and calls Symbolic Label Access to determine the amount of DLBL/EXTENT or TLBL information to be processed. If the space obtained by a previous OPEN or CLOSE in this job step is not sufficient to meet the label processing requirements, a FREEVIS macro is issued to release this space and a GETVIS macro is issued to release this space and a GETVIS macro is issued to obtain the required space. Pointers and channel programs are then updated and an exit is taken to the next phase.



\$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF Address Constants
Charts AS - AY

<u>Objective:</u> To relocate all DTF address constants from the assembled address into executable main storage addresses.

Entry: From the OPENR macro to the label START.

Exits:

- To \$\$BOPNR3.
- To the Open Monitor, \$\$BOPEN, when the last DTF table is processed.

Method: The \$\$BCPENR routine first determines if modification (relocation) of the DTF address constants is necessary by subtracting the assembled DTF table address from the relocated DTF table address. The relocation factor in register RELOCREG is the result of this operation. If the relocation factor is 0, no relocation is necessary.

If relocation is required and if the DTF has not already been relocated, the relocation indicator in the DTF is turned on. The CCW address in the CCB and the logic module address in the common portion of the DTF are then modified. If the required relocation was accomplished by a previous opening of the file, the entire relocation routine is bypassed for the file.

Following the modification of addresses in the common portion of the DTF, the individual DTF type is determined and the address of the corresponding address modification table is obtained. When the remaining addresses in the DTF have been modified, a branch is made to the ending routine.

The ending routine determines the next operation. If there are more DTFs to be processed, a branch is made to the beginning of the relocation routine to repeat the procedure for the next DTF. If the last DTF has been relocated, the Open Monitor, \$\$BOPEN, is fetched.

\$\$BOPENC: Check Duplicate Device Assignments for Logical Urits Chart AW

Objective: To determine if a physical
device is assigned to more than one of the
logical units specified in the operand of
the OPENC macro.

Entry: From an OPENC macro expansion to the label OPENCNAM. <u>Exits:</u> To the problem program if no error is detected, or to CANCEL if a physical device is assigned to more than one logical unit.

Method: The \$\$BOPENC phase begins by building a table, called the OPENC table, containing the 2-byte LUB entry for each logical unit specified in the OPENC macro operand. Because the first byte of a LUB entry contains a pointer to a specific PUB (physical device), the byte can be compared to the corresponding byte of any other LUB to determine if a duplicate assignment exists. (Refer to VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference: Supervisor for additional information pertaining to LUB and PUB entries.)

The comparison is carried out in the following manner. Byte 0 of the first LUB entry in the OPENC table is compared to the corresponding byte in the second, third, fourth, etc., until the end of the table is reached. Then, byte 0 of the second LUB entry in the OPENC table is compared to the corresponding byte in the third, fourth, fifth, etc., until the end of the table is reached. The procedure is repeated until all of the LUB entries are similarly checked. If an equal comparison is made at any point in the procedure, checking is discontinued, error message 4885I is printed, and the job is canceled.

\$\$BENDOB: Enqueue and Dequeue for VSE/VSAM Routines Chart AX

Objective: To enable the VSE/VSAM routines to enqueue and dequeue their OPEN and CLOSE routines in the B-transient area of the supervisor, although these routines are not themselves B-transient routines.

Entry: From a VSE/VSAM routine that issues
the ENQB macro.

Exit: To the calling routine that issued
the ENQB macro.

Method: When a VSE/VSAM routine issues the ENQB macro, \$\$BENDQB is fetched (via SVC 2) from the core image library and put into the B-transient area. Control is transferred to \$\$BENDQB, which temporarily returns control (via SVC 8) to the routine that issued the ENQB macro. (The B-transient area is <u>not</u> released.) the DEQB macro is issued, control is returned (via SVC 9) to the B-transient routine \$\$BENDQB, which has been previously loaded into the transient area by the ENQB macro. \$\$BENDQB now executes an SVC 11 to release the B-transient area and to return to the highest-priority program ready to run. (Note: The ENQB and DEQB macros destroy the original contents of registers 0 and 1.

\$\$BOPNR2: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 2 Charts FA-BC

Objective: To relocate the address
constants in DTFCP, DTFPT, DTFDI, DTFDR,
and DTFDU tables.

Entry: From \$\$BOPNR3.

Exit: To \$\$BOPEN.

Method: This phase is an extension of
\$\$BCPENR and performs the same function in
the same manner.

\$\$BOPNR3: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 3 Charts BE-BF

<u>Objective:</u> To relocate the address constants of DTFs connected with unit record files.

Entry: From \$\$BOPENR.

Exits:

- To \$\$BOPNR2 if other than unit record files still have to be relocated.
- To the Open Monitor, \$\$BOPEN, if no more files have to be relocated.

<u>MODLOOP (Address Modification) Subroutine Chart BD</u>

The MODLOOP subroutine performs the actual address modification using an address modification table. The following example of the relocation of a work file DTFMT table (see Figure 9) illustrates the operation of the MODLOOP subroutine and the use of the address modification table.

Modification of the address constants starts with those in the common portion of the DTF table. At this time the following registers are loaded:

- BASEREG with the address of byte 0 of the DTF table (this register is used as a pointer within the DTF table).
- MODREG with the address of byte 0 of the address modification table at the label COMMON.
- CCWREG with the address of byte 0 of the DTF table.

The address modification table at the label COMMON contains three hexadecimal bytes, X'020808'. The first byte is a count of the number of address constants (ADCONS) to be modified; two in this case. This count controls the number of times the modification loop is used. The succeeding

bytes contain displacement values to update the register, BASEREG.

Byte	Bits	Function
0-15		ссв.
(0-F)		
16 (10)		X'08' indicates DTF
1	1	relocated by OPENR.
17-19]	Address of logic module.
(11-13)		
20 (14)	ľ '	DTF type (X'10')
[21 (15)		1 = No rewind.
1		1 = Unload rewind.
1		1 = Work file.
1		1 = Read backward.
1		1 = Write.
		1 = POINTW.
	6	1 = Force checking of read
1	_ '	or write.
1	7	1 = Forward space before
	l	next operation.
122-23		Not used.
(16-17)	•	!
124-25		Record length.
(18-19)		
26-27		Maximum BLKSIZE.
(1A-1B)		
128 (1C)		Read op code.
129-31	•	FOF address.
(1D-1F)	•	
132-39	•	CCW.
(20 - 27) (40 - 43		 Dlock count initialized
•		Block count, initialized
(28-2B)		00000000 for read forward, 00400000 for read backward.
1 44 (2C)	•	11 = Error routine.
144(20)		= Effor foutthe.
1	•	
i	1 2	
		Not used.
145-47	•	Address of error routine.
(2D-2F)	•	l
	·	
		arentheses are displacements al notation.

Figure 9. DTFMT Work File Format

The first time through the address modification loop, the second byte of the modification table (Y'08') is added to the starting address of the DTF (BASEREG) to obtain the location of the CCW address in the CCB to which the relocation factor (RELOCREG) is added. The count of address constants to be modified is then reduced by 1, and the modification loop is entered a second time. Upon reentering the modification loop, the BASEREG contains the starting address of the DTF+8 to which is added the third byte of the modification table (Y'08'). As a result, BASEREG then points to byte 16 in the DTF table, that is, to the logic module address. The relocation factor is added to this address and the count of address constants to be modified is again reduced by 1. Since the

count now goes to 0, an exit is made from the modification loop.

After determining that the DTF type is a DTFMT work file, the MODLOOP subroutine is again used. This time the register MODREG is loaded with the address of byte 0 of the address modification table at the label MAGWORK which contains four hexadecimal bytes, X'030C040C'. This means that three address constants (the address of the EOF routine, the data address in the CCW, and the address of the error routine) are to be modified. The register BASEREG contains the starting address of the DTF+16 (carried over from the modification of addresses in the common portion of the DTF). To this is added the second byte of the MAGWORK address modification table (X'OC'). As a result, BASEREG contains the location of the EOF routine address (that is, 16 + 12), or byte 28.

Note: Register BASEREG points to the start of a 4-byte field, the last three bytes of which contain the address of interest.

The relocation factor (RELOCREG) is then added to the address constant. This procedure is repeated for the remaining two address constants in the DTF table.

\$\$BOPENS: RPS SVA Initialization Routine Chart BS

Objective: To initialize the fetch and page management channel programs for RPS, if this routine was called by IPL. To load the RPS local directory list and phase loading routine into the SVA, if this routine was called by \$\$BOPEN during the first DASD open.

Entry: From IPL and \$\$BOPFN.

Exits: To IPI and \$\$BOPEN.

Method: When called by IPL, the SVA initialization routine determines the device type of SYSRES. If SYSRES is an RPS device, the device type is set in the fetch table for the core image library.

If this routine was called by \$\$BOPEN during the first open of a DASD file, space is obtained from the SVA, and the local directory list and the phase loading routine are loaded into the GETVIS area of the SVA. A SYSCOM indicator (displacement Y'FC') is set when all operations are completed successfully, or when either the GETVIS or load operations fail.

\$\$BOPENS exits back to IPL with an SVC 11 or to \$\$BOPEN with an SVC 2.

\$\$VOPENT: RPS Phase Loading Routine Charts BT-BU

Objective: To locate in or load into the SVA the RPS phases for all access methods, when called by an open transient. To remove RPS phases and release SVA space for a terminating job, when called by \$IJBEOT.

Entry: From open transients when RPS support is provided for a DTF. From \$IJBEOT when a job terminates.

Exit: To the calling transient.

Method: When called by an open transient, the RPS phase loading routine issues a load to search the RPS local directory list for the required phase. If the phase is not in the SVA, a GETVIS is issued to acquire space and the phase is loaded. Exit is taken to the calling transient with the load address of the phase or an unsuccessful condition code set.

When called by \$IJBEOT, the routine searches the RPS local directory list for phases that were loaded into the GETVIS area of the SVA for a terminating job. If this is the last job requiring the phase, the SVA space is released and the directory entry is set to inactive. On return to \$IJBEOT no condition codes are set.

\$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor, Phase 1 Charts BG-BI

Objective: To determine the DTF file type and to fetch the proper close phase for sequential DASD, DAM, and ISAM files (Phase 2 of the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOS2 is fetched to handle other file types. For magnetic tape files, \$\$BCLOS3 is fetched).

Entry: From a problem program CLOSE macro expansion, or from a successful CLOSF if more than one file is specified by the same CLOSE macro instruction. \$\$BCLOSE is also entered from phase 2 of the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOS2. In addition, \$\$BPCLOS enters \$\$BCLOSE at EOJ to close any unclosed 3800 printer extended buffering DTFs.

Exits:

- To the appropriate close phase.
- To the message writer if an error is detected.
- To the problem program if no files remain to be closed.
- To phase 2 of the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOS2.

 To \$\$BPCLOS when \$\$BCLOSE was originally invoked by \$\$BPCLOS.

<u>Method</u>: The first phase of the Close Monitor begins the initialization of a table, located at the end of the logical transient area, for the close operation. This table is called the <u>open table</u> even though it is used by both initialization (open) and termination (close) phases. Files requiring label processing, except for sequential DASD, also enter information into the GETVIS label area.

Next, the \$\$BCLOSE phase validates the address of the first 44 bytes of the DTF table for all file types except VSE/VSAM files; for VSE/VSAM files, phase \$\$BCVSAM is called. For magnetic tape (DTFMT, DTFDI, DTFPH, and DTFCP), unit record (DTFCD, DTFPT, DTFCN, and DTFPR), optical reader (DTFOR), and magnetic ink character recognition (DTFMR) files, \$\$BCLOSE fetches the second phase of the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOS2.

For all sequential DASD files, \$\$BCLOSE fetches the SVA link phase \$\$BOSFB1 to link to the \$IJJGTOP SVA phase to complete the close processing. For ISAM DTFs, \$\$BCLOS4 is called. For DAM DTFs, \$\$BCLRTS is called.

For diskette files, \$\$FCLOSE reads label information from SYSRFS into the transient label area at the beginning of the open table, saves the SYSRFS CCHHR address of the next record in the open table for use by the next close phase, and fetches the diskette close phase \$\$BODIO4.

\$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor, Phase 2 Charts BK-BM

Objective: To initiate the proper close procedure for unit record, optical reader, MICR, and Optical Reader/Sorter files.

Entry: From phase 1 of the Close Monitor,
\$\$BCLOSE.

Exits:

- To phase 1 of the Close Monitor, \$\$BCLOSE, for DTFCP DASD and ISAM-ADD files.
- To \$\$BCLOSP for punch and paper tape files,
- To \$\$BCTC01 for BTAM-FS telecommunication files.
- To \$\$BCLOS3 for magnetic tape (DTFMT) files.
- To \$\$BCMR01 for magnetic ink character recognition (MICR) type files.

- To the message writer phase, \$\$BOMSG1, if an invalid file type is detected.
- To \$\$BPCLOS (the 3800 printer automatic close module) when CLOSE was issued by \$\$BPCLOS.

<u>Method:</u> The function performed by the second phase of the Close Monitor depends upon the file type:

- **For files opened to a 3800 printer,

 \$\$BCLOS2 enters module IJDPR3 (residing
 in the SVA) at offset 32 to perform
 close processing related to the 3800
 printer. The address of IJDPR3 is
 obtained from the Anchor Table Extension
 (ATY). The address of the ATY is
 obtained by issuing a CDLOAD for phase
 IJDANCHX. IJDPR3 is called only if the
 OPN3800 bit in COMRG is on, indicating
 that one or more files were opened in
 3800 printer extended buffering mode.
- For optical reader and unit records files, except paper tape and DTFCD punch files, the only function performed by phase \$\$BCLOS2 is to turn off the open indicator in the DTF table for the file being closed.
- For DTFCD punch files, after turning off the open indicator, \$\$BCLOS2 fetches phase \$\$BCLOSP if error recovery is possible.
- For DTFCP and DTFDI magnetic tape files, \$\$BCLOS2 fetches phase \$\$BCCPT1 after first checking to determine whether or not tape error statistics by volume are being collected. For DTFCP and DTFDI DASD files, \$\$BCLOS2 fetches the first Close Monitor phase, \$\$BCLOSE. For DTFCP and DTFDI punch files, phase \$\$BCLOSP is fetched.
- For all diskette input/output unit files \$\$BCLOS2 fetches the first close monitor phase \$\$BCLOSE.
- For BTAM-ES telecommunication files,
 \$\$BCLOS2 fetches phase \$\$BCTC01.
- For 3505 or 3525 with OMR or RCE specified, \$\$BCLOS2 resets the device to the normal mode.

\$\$BCLOS3: Close Monitor, Phase 3 Chart BN

<u>Objective:</u> To initiate the proper close procedure for magnetic tape files.

Entry: From \$\$BCLOS2.

Exit: To the appropriate close phase for magnetic tape (DTFMT) files.

Method: The function performed by the third
phase of the Close Monitor depends on the
file type.

- For DTFMT work files, \$\$BCLOS3 saves the console indicator in the open table for use by the next phase, and fetches phase \$\$BCMT06 to close the file.
- For all DTFMT input files, \$\$BCLOS3 initializes the deblocker areas in the DTF table. For standard labeled input and output files, SYSPTS label information is read into the open table for use by the next phase. For blocked output files, the address of the logic module is stored in the save area for register 11. The address of the TRUNC routine is substituted for the logic module address in the TTF and the TRUNC routine is executed. \$\$BCLOS3 then saves the console indicator in the open table, and fetches phase \$\$BCMT05 to close the file.
- \$\$BCLOS3 calculates the PUB2 address of a tape DTF to be closed and saves it in the open table.

\$\$BCLOS4: Close Monitor, Phase 4 Chart BO

Objective: To determine the DTF file type and to fetch the proper close phase for ISAM files.

Entry: From \$\$BCLOSE.

Exits:

- To the appropriate close phase.
- To the message writer if an error is detected.
- To the problem program if no files remain to be closed.
- To phase IIPCLOSE if an ISAM DTF is linked with a VSE/VSAM file.
- To phase \$\$POCISC if CDLOAD for IIPCLOSE was not successful.

<u>Method:</u> This phase of the Close Monitor begins the initialization of a table, located at the end of the logical transient area, for the close operation. This table is called the <u>open table</u> even though it is used by both initialization (open) and termination (close) phases. Files requiring label processing, except for sequential DASD, also enter information into the GETVIS label area.

For ISAM DTFs, byte 16 bit 0 of the DTF table is checked. This bit is set to one by phase ISCOPEN if the ISAM DTF is linked with a VSE/VSAM file. In that case the

close-active indicator is reset and phase IIPCLOSE is loaded using the CDLOAD function. IIPCLOSE is a part of the ISAM Interface program, IIP. The user return address is stored from the user save area into the DTF, the file list pointer is stored into register 0 of the user save area, control is given to ISCCLOSE, and the B-transient area is released.

For all ISAM DTFs not linked to a VSE/VSAM file, \$\$BCLOS4 reads label information from SYSRES into the open table for use by the next phase, and fetches the ISAM close phase \$\$BCISOA.

\$\$BCLLBL: Close Monitor Label Space Processor Chart BJ

Objective: To determine the size of the read-in area required to process the DLBL/EXTENT and/or the TLBL information and to issue a GETVIS for the required space.

Entry: From \$\$BCLOSE.

Exit:

- To \$\$BCLOS2 for tape.
- To \$\$BCLOS4 for an ISAM file.
- To \$\$BOMSG1 if an error occurs.

Method: \$\$BCLLBL, at close time, builds a parameter list and calls Symbolic Label Access to determine the amount of DLBL/EXTENT or TLBL information to be processed. If the space obtained by a previous OPEN or CLOSE in this job step is not sufficient to meet the label processing requirements, a FREEVIS macro is issued to release this space and a GETVIS macro is issued to obtain the required space. Pointers and channel programs are then updated and an exit is taken to the next phase.

\$\$BCLRPS: DASD RPS Common Close Charts BQ-BR

Objective: To reestablish the original DTF that was modified for ISAM/RPS or for DAM DASDs.

Entry:

 From \$\$BCLOSE or \$\$BCLOS2 for DAM or ISAM DTFs.

Exits:

- To \$\$BCLOSE for direct access or IOCS type DTFs.
- To \$\$BODACL for direct access type DTFs

with user trailer labels.

 To \$\$BOISOA for indexed sequential access type DTFs.

<u>Method:</u> This routine is called when the DTF for the device being closed was modified to support RPS.

All access methods use this routine. Therefore, it is necessary to first determine the DTF type, since the displacements are different in each case. Refer to Figures 10 and 11.

DTF	Type Code	Byte	Dev Type Bit ¹	DTF Type Bit ²	Exit to
DTFDA No trailer labels and DTFPH	22,23	32(20)	1.	7	\$\$BCLOSE
DTFDA with trailer labels	22	32(20)	1	7	\$\$BODACL
DTFIS (all)	24,25,26,27	65(41)	4,7 ³	5	\$\$BCISOA

¹ If this bit is set on, the device supports RPS.

Figure 10. Use of Different DTF Types by \$\$BCLRPS

The addresses of the original logic module and channel program are restored in the DTF. The bits indicating an RPS DTF and that it has been extended into the virtual area are turned off. The user save area that was obtained for the DTF extension is freed, and the use count for the RPS logic module is decremented.

\$\$BOSDC1: SD Close Input and Output,
Charts CA-CB

Objective: To restore the DTF to its
original state in the event the file was
not opened.

Entry: From \$\$BCLOSE.

Exits:

To the CLOSE Monitor, \$\$BCLOSE.

<u>Method:</u> This routine is only entered if the file was not opened successfully. It restores the DTF to its original state and returns to \$\$BCIOSE to process another DTF.

0 (0) Channel Program (Variable Length)						
Work Space						
172 (AC) (Except ISAM) Sector values (up to 4)						
	180 (B4) Address of original logic module					
184 (B8) 72 Byte Register Save Area						
256 (100) Additional Work Space 256 bytes for DAM 128 bytes for ISAM						

Figure 11. ISAM RPS or DAM DASD Device Independent Extension Work Area

\$\$BOSDC2: Close: Free Track Function, Chart CC

Objective: To free any tracks held by the file being closed.

Entry: From ISAM CLOSE.

Exits:

- To the close monitor, \$\$BCLOSE.
- To \$\$BCISOA for ISAM files.
- To the problem program.

Method: This routine searches the track hold table to determine whether a track is being held by the file being closed. If so, an SVC 36 is issued to free the track. If another file remains to be closed, control returns to the close monitor, \$\$BCLOSE. If ISAM files are being processed, control returns to \$\$BCISOA. Otherwise, control returns to the problem program.

If this bit is set on, the DTF extends into the partition virtual area.

³ Bit 4 on indicates prime data. Bit 7 on indicates index.

\$\$BOSDEV: SD Close, Chart CD

Objective: When FEOVD has been specified. \$\$BOSDEV closes the current volume and opens a new volume.

Entry:

From the FFOVD macro.

Exits:

- To the TES processor \$\$BOPEN.
- To the problem program.

Method: An interface to the OPEN/CLOSE SVA phase is established allowing the FEOVD request to be processed.

\$\$BODQUE: Dequeue Extent JIBs, Chart CE

Objective: To find the JIB (Job Information Block) chain for a particular logical unit: and to clear any extent type JIBs associated with the logical unit, and release them to the available JIB chain.

Entry: From the ISAM DASD open phase.

Exit: To the problem program if no files remain to be opened, or to the TES processor, \$\$BOPEN, unless the name of the phase to be returned to is supplied by the calling phase.

<u>Method:</u> After storing the contents of registers 3 through 8 and the name of the phase that is to be returned to, if specified, phase \$\$BODQUE locates the proper 2-byte entry in the LUB table for the logical unit specified and examines the second byte of the LUB entry to determine if any JIBs are chained to the LUB. If JIBs are chained to the LUB; that is, if the second byte of the LUB is not hex 'FF', the address of the first JIB in the chain is calculated by adding the pointer (byte 2 of the LUB) multiplied by 4 (the length of a JIB entry) to the starting address of the JIB table.

Byte 2 of the JIB entry is then examined to determine if the JIB contains an extent. If the JIB contains an extent, the extent is cleared. Once the extent is cleared, the pointer to the next JIB in the chain is obtained from the fourth byte of the current JIB. The current JIB is then placed in the available JIB chain and the pointer to the first available JIB (FAVP) is modified accordingly. When the JIB has been placed in the available chain, or if the JIB does not contain an extent, the address of the next JIB in the chain is calculated using the pointer obtained from the fourth byte of the current JIB. The procedure is repeated for the next JIB.

Note: All of the JIB processing described is handled through the supervisor extent interface.

Phase \$\$BODQUE then fetches the calling phase or the first phase of the TES processor, \$\$BOPEN, if the name of the calling phase was not supplied and there is another file to be opened. If the name of the calling phase was not supplied and there are no other files to be opened, phase \$\$BODQUE returns control to the problem program via an SVC 11.

\$\$BRELSE: Device Release Charts EE-EG

<u>Objective:</u> To perform the actual device release of the units in the table released by the RELEASE macro.

Entry: Fetched by RELEASE from SYSRES to the transient area.

Exits:

- To the problem program via SVC 11.
- TO RELEASE via LINKREG.

Method: To perform the actual device release, the transient sets the unit to the permanent assignment, if one exists. Otherwise, the device is unassigned. the device is at permanent assignment level, the transient takes no action on the unit. Before any release is attempted, a check is made for ownership of the unit. If the requesting partition does not own the unit, or if the unit is already unassigned, the transient ignores the request.

COMMONLY USED LOGICAL TRANSIENTS

The logical transients included in this section of the manual are those that pertain to sequential, indexed-sequential, and direct access DASD files.

\$\$BOFLPT: DASD File-Protect Charts FA-FC

Objective: To place the upper and lower extent limits into Job Information Blocks (JIBs) to provide file protection for DASD files.

Entry:

From phase \$\$BOISO7 for ISAM files.

Exits:

To the open monitor, \$\$BOPEN, if more

files are to be opened and a specific phase name is not supplied.

- To the problem program if a specific phase name is not supplied and no more files remain to be opened.
- To the transient phase specified by the calling phase.

Method: The \$\$BOFLPT phase provides file protection for DASD files by storing extent limit information in the JIB table. For the IBM 2311 Disk Storage Drive, the IBM 2314 Direct Access Storage Facility, and the IBM 2319 Disk Storage Facility, the lower and upper cylinder limits are stored in a single JIB. For the IBM 3330, 3340, and 3350, the extent limit information is stored in two chained JIBs, the first containing the lower extent limit and the second the upper extent limit. The extent JIBs are chained to the Logical Unit Block (LUB) entry to which the device is assigned. Further information pertaining to the JIBs and LUBs is found in <u> VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference:</u> Supervisor.

The \$\$BOFLPT phase begins by determining:

- · The number of extents to be processed.
- The addresses of the DLBI-EXTENT card image, FAVP (the pointer to the first available JIE), and the JIB table.
- The file type.
- The device type.

When these factors are known, the phase determines the address of the LUB entry for the logical unit used by the file. The contents of the LUB are then loaded into a pair of registers, LUBADRIL (lower limit) and LUBADRUI (upper limit), that are used to insert the extent information into extent type JIBs.

The second byte of the LUB contains a pointer to the first JIB in the chain for the LUB (if the byte does not contain X'FF', indicating that no JIBs are chained to the LUB). This pointer calculates the address of the JIB. The JIF, in turn, contains a similar pointer that calculates the address of the next JIB in the chain. A pointer of X'FF' indicates the end of the chain.

If extents for the file remain to be processed and one of the following conditions is reached, phase \$\$BOFLPT obtains and builds a new JIB entry:

No JIBs are chained to the LUB.

- No extent type JIBs remain in the chain.
- The end of the JIB chain is reached and more JIBs are required.

The address of the new JIB is calculated by using the pointer to the first unused JIB in the JIBs available chain, found in location FAVP in the supervisor. As in the case of JIBs chained to the LUB, this new JIB contains a pointer to the next available JIB that will be used if needed.

After the extent information is stored in the JIB(s), the pointers are modified (as required), to complete the chain and the registers are restored. From information passed by the calling phase, \$\$BOFLPT determines the next action required and issues either an SVC 2 to fetch the proper transient phase, or an SVC 11 to return to the problem program.

\$\$BODSPV: VTOC Display, Phase 1 Chart FD

Objective: To determine the logical unit (SYSLOG or SYSLST) on which the operator wants the VTOC displayed, and to print an error message if SYSLST is the unit selected but not assigned to a printer.

Entry: From phases \$\$BODMS2, \$\$BODIO8, \$\$BODSMO, or \$\$BOMSG2 when the operator's response is DSPLYV.

Exit:

- To the second phase of VTOC display, \$\$BODSPW. (If a diskette is being displayed, exit is to phase \$\$BODSPO.)
- To job control via an SVC 11 if the operator's response to message 4V95A is END or CANCEL and the open was for job control.
- To phase \$\$BCNCL via an SVC 6 to cancel the job if the operator's response to message 4V96A is END or CANCEL and the open was not for job control.

Method: The first phase of VTOC display
issues a message on SYSLOG to determine
whether the operator wants the VTOC
displayed on SYSLOG or on SYSLST. If the
operator's reply is SYSLST, a check is made
to ensure that SYSLST is a printer. If
SYSLST is not a printer, error message
4V96A is issued. If the VTOC is to be
displayed on SYSLST, preparation is made to
start the display on a new page. Phase
\$\$BODSPV then fetches phase 2 of VTOC
display, \$\$BODSPW (or, if a diskette is
being displayed, \$\$BODSPV fetches
\$\$BODSPO).

\$\$BODSPW: VTOC Display, Phase 2 Charts FE-FF

Objective: To display, on either SYSLST or SYSLOG, the VTOC for the volume currently being opened.

Entry: From the first phase of VTOC display, \$\$BODSPV.

Exit: To \$\$BOMSG1 or \$\$BODSMW.

Method: The volume label on the current volume being opened is read to retrieve the pointer (CCHHR address) to the VTOC and the volume serial number. A header line is printed to indicate the date and identify the volume by the volume serial number. Next, the first label in the VTOC (format-4 label) is read to determine the limits of the VTOC, and the CCW chain is initialized to read the file labels (format-1) contained in the VTOC.

The file label for each file on the volume is displayed by printing the contents of the label. The first line printed for each format-1 label contains the first 59 bytes of the label and includes:

- filename
- format identifier
- file serial number
- volume sequence number
- creation date
- expiration date.

Succeeding lines printed for a format-1 label contain extent information. Each line contains a maximum of three extents. (If more than three extents are specified for the file, the additional extents are contained in a format-3 label.) When all extents for a file have been printed, phase \$\$BODSPW initializes to process the next format-1 label in the same manner.

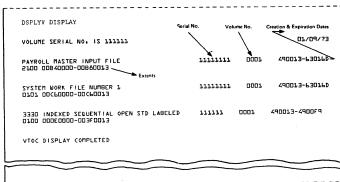


Figure 12. VTOC Display of Disk Pack (DSPLYV Response)

When all format-1 labels in the VTOC have been processed, the message 'VTOC DISPLAY COMPLETED' is printed and control is passed to \$\$BOVDMP. Figure 12 is a sample of the VTOC display printed by this phase.

\$\$BODSPO: Diskette VTOC Display, Chart JA

Objective: To display, on either SYSLST or SYSLOG, the VTOC for the diskette currently being opened.

Entry: From the first phase of VTOC display, \$\$BODSPV.

Exit: To \$\$BODIO8, \$\$BODMSG, or \$\$BODSMO.

Method: The volume label on the volume currently being opened is read to retrieve the volume serial number. A header line is printed to indicate the date and identify the volume by the volume serial number. Next, the CCW chain is initialized to read the file labels (HDR1) contained in the VTOC.

The file label for each file on the volume is displayed by printing the contents of the label. The printed line includes:

- file name
- beginning extent
- end extent
- volume sequence number
- creation date
- expiration date

When extents for a file have been printed, phase \$\$BODSPO initializes to process the next label in the same manner.

When all HDR1 labels in the VTOC have been processed, control is returned to the calling transient. Figure 13 is a sample of the VTOC display printed by this phase.

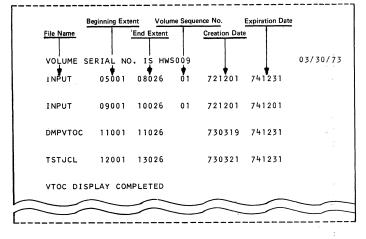


Figure 13. VTOC Display of Diskette (DSPLYV Response)

\$\$BOVDMO: Diskette VTOC Dump Chart JB

Objective: To provide a list of all the labels in the VTOC for the diskette being opened.

Entry: From phase 2 of the Diskette Open Message Writer, \$\$BODMS2, or \$\$BODIO8, when the operator's response is CANCELV, or from the problem program.

Exits: To phase \$\$BCNCL via SVC 6 to cancel the job if \$\$BOVDMO is entered from the message writer phase \$\$BODMS2, or to the problem program, or to \$\$BOWDMO to continue CANCELV.

Method: Phase \$\$BOVDMO reads the VOL1 label to retrieve the volume serial number for the volume being opened. A header line is then printed on SYSLST to indicate the date and identify the volume with the volume serial number. If SYSLST is not assigned to a printer, the VTOC Dump is ignored.

\$\$BOWDMO: Diskette List VTOC Chart JC

Objective: To provide a listing of all the labels in the VTOC for the diskette.

Entry: From phase 1 of the VTOC dump, \$\$BOVDMO.

Exits: Control returns to job control or to the user's program. Figure 14 is a sample of the VTOC Dump printed by this phase.

Method: All the VTOC labels for unsecured files (except blank labels) and the file being accessed (whether secured or unsecured) are listed. Any other secured files are not listed. When all labels have been printed, an EOJ message is printed and control returns to the user or to job control.

Note: NB, NS, NP, NE, or NV indicate that a label field is blank. B,S, P, E, or V indicate that the label field was found to be not blank.

\$\$BODMSG: Diskette Open Error Message Writer Phase 1 Chart GA

Objective: To initialize the message output area, SYSLOG CCB and CCWs, and to fetch phase 2 of the message writer, \$\$BODMS2.

Entry:

- From the diskette VTOC display phase, \$\$BODSPO.
- From a diskette open or close phase.
- From the DTFCP open phase, \$\$BODUCP.

Exit: To phase 2 of the open error message writer, \$\$BODMS2.

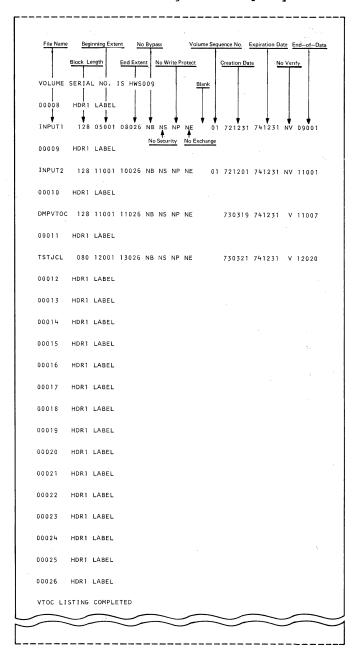


Figure 14. VTOC Dump of Diskette (CANCELV Response)

<u>Method:</u> The calling phase supplies the following information to the message writer:

- Register 0 contains the last four characters in the name of the phase requesting the message. On cancel messages, register 0 need not be initialized. \$\$BO is assumed for the first four characters of the phase name.
- Register 2 contains the address of the DTF table for the current file.
- Register 3 contains the message code (in binary) for the message to be printed. This code is converted to the last two digits of the message number (XX in the example 4nXXI).

- Transient region t 1185 contains the numeric decimal value assigned to the various open/close phases for message numbering (X in the example 4XnnI).
- Transient region + 1000 contains the start of the CCB.

The message writer overlays the first 888 bytes of the transient region. Therefore, any information that the calling phase needs to save is located beyond this point.

This phase first saves the last four characters in the name of the phase requesting the message. It initializes the SYSLOG message cutput area with the organization type numeric code, DTF file name, and symbolic unit and constant. builds the SYSLOG CCWs for writing the message and reading the response, and determines if the required message is in this phase of the message writer. If it is not in this phase, the routine determines which overlay phase contains the message (either \$\$BOMSG3, \$\$BOMSG4, \$\$BOMSG5, \$\$BOMSG6, or \$\$BOMSG7) and fetches \$\$BODMS2 to load the required overlay phase.

\$\$BODMS2: Diskette Open Frror Message <u>Writer</u>, <u>Phase 2 Charts GP-GC</u>

Objectives: To issue an error message to the operator, read the operator's reply (if an IBM 1052 Printer-Keyboard is assigned to SYSLOG) or exit to the phase that requested the message (after ensuring the validity of the operator's response). Also, to cancel the job either by operator request or, if the message type indicates this, by end-of-job.

Entry: From phase 1 of the Diskette Open Error Message Writer, \$\$BODMSG.

Exit:

- To the VTOC dump phase, \$\$BOVDMO.
- To phase 1 of the VTOC display routine, \$\$BODSPV.
- To the diskette open/close organization phase requesting the message (if a cancel was not encountered).

Method: \$\$BODMSG supplied the following information to this phase:

- Register 1 contains the name (last four characters) of the message overlay phase to fetch if the required message appears in some other phase than \$\$BOMSG1.
- Register 3 contains the address of the message to be written on SYSLOG.

This phase determines the message type. It can be either a file overlap pack, wrong

pack, or other.

For wrong-pack type, the message is initialized with the pack number and the wrong-pack switch is turned on. This switch is interrogated later in the routine to test if the operator has mounted the correct pack.

Next, the routine determines if the message to be written on SYSLOG is in main storage. If the message is not in main storage, the message overlay phase containing the required message is loaded into main storage. The message overlay phases consist of \$\$BOMSG3, \$\$BOMSG4, \$\$BOMSG5, \$\$BOMSG6, and \$\$BOMSG7. These phases contain messages only. The message is then moved to the SYSLOG output area and an SVC 0 is issued to type the message and read the reply.

If the message indicates the job is not to be canceled, the routine determines if the user wants a VTOC display. If a VTOC display is wanted, the routine issues an SVC 2 to fetch \$\$BODSPV, the VTOC display phase. If the user does not want a VTOC display, the routine tests for a D-type message.

If the message is a D-type, the message return indicator is set, the address of the next phase name is retrieved, and an SVC 2 is issued to fetch the return phase. If the message is not a D-type, the routine tests the wrong-pack switch as previously

The message writer issues an illegal response message for the following conditions:

- Operator reply of IGNORE for a D-type message.
- Equal file ID message.
- No EXTENT to be bypassed.
- 4. Next pack not mounted.

If the job is to be canceled, a test determines if the job control open switch (in communications region) is on. If so, an SVC 11 is issued to return to job control. If the switch is not on, the routine checks to determine if a request has been made for a VTOC dump. If yes, an SVC 2 is issued to call the VTOC dump transient, \$\$BOVDMO. If a VTOC dump has not been requested, an SVC 6 is issued and the job is canceled.

Figure 16 shows the message code (passed via register 3) together with the last two digits and action indicator of the associated number. For reference purposes, the text of the message is also included.

\$\$BODSMO: Diskette Data Security Message Writer Chart GD

Objective: To issue message 4n99D and read the reply from the operator.

Entry: From \$\$BODSPO, \$\$BODIO1, \$\$BODIO5,
and return from \$\$BODSPV.

Exits: The exit depends on the operator's reply to message 4n99D.

- If reply is YFS, control returns to the problem program.
- If the reply is EOB, NO, CANCEL, or CANCELV, the problem program is canceled. If a VTOC dump is requested, \$\$BOVDMO is fetched. If \$\$BODSMO was fetched by job control, an exit is made to job control.
- If the reply is DSPLYV, \$\$BODSPV is fetched.

Method: After gathering preliminary data about the calling routine, \$\$BODSMO issues message 4n99D, 'DATA SECURED FILE/VOLUME ACCESSED'. If the operator types YES on SYSLOG, the file is made available.

\$\$BOVDMP: VTOC Dump Charts FG-FH

Objective: To provide a list of all the labels in the VTOC, for the volume being opened.

Entry: From phase 2 of the Disk Open
Message Writer, \$\$BOMSG2, when the
operator's response is CANCELV, or from the
problem program.

Exits: To phase \$\$BCNCL via an SVC 6 to cancel the job if \$\$BOVDMP is entered from the message writer phase \$\$BOMSG2, or to the problem program, or to \$\$BOWDMP to continue CANCELV.

<u>Method:</u> Phase \$\$BOVDMP reads the VOL1 label to retrieve the volume serial number and the CCHHR address of the VTOC for the volume being opened. A header line is then printed on SYSLST to indicate the date and identity of the volume with the volume serial number. If SYSLST is not assigned to a printer, the VTOC Dump is ignored.

\$\$BOWDMP: List VTOC Chart FI

Objective: To provide a listing of all the labels in the VTOC.

Entry: From phase 1 of the VTOC dump,
\$\$BOVDMP.

<u>Exits:</u> If no record if found, exit is to the disk message writer, \$\$BOMSG1. Otherwise, control returns to job control or to the user's program.

Method: All the VTOC labels for unsecured files (except blank labels) and for the file being accessed (whether secured or unsecured) are listed. Any other secured files are not listed. A maximum of five extents are printed on a line. When all labels have been printed, an EOJ message is printed, and control returns to the user or to job control.

Figure 15 is a sample of the VTOC Dump printed by this phase.

```
CANCELV DISPLAY
 VOLUME SERIAL NO. IS 111111
DDDDDDDDG FORMAT 4 LABEL
04040404 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 0404040 04040
 000000005 FORMAT 5 LABEL
000000006 FORMAT 1 LABEL
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       SERIAL NO. 111111 VOL NO. 0001 490018-640060 014040 275. COM 15 NO. 15 NO. 20 4000 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 NO. 20 15 
 PAYROLL MASTER INPUT FILE
POINTER IS 000000000
DODDODOOR FORMAT 1 LABEL
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       SERIAL NO. 111111 VOL NO. 0001 490013-630160 010700 SYS. CODE IS DOS VERSION 5
SYSTEM WORK FILE NUMBER 1
POINTER IS DODDODDO
000000000 FORMAT 1 LABEL
DELEMENT OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF A STATE OF
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            SERIAL NO. 111111 VOL NO. 0001 490013-4900F9 010700
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           SYS. CODE IS ** RAFTOL **
POINTER IS 000000000
VTOC LISTING COMPLETED
```

Figure 15. VTOC Dump of Disk Pack (CANCELV Response)

\$\$BOMSG1 Disk Open Error Message Writer, Phase 1 Chart FJ

Objective: To initialize the message output area, SYSLOG CCB and CCWs, and to fetch phase 2 of the message writer, \$\$BOMSG2 for informational messages. For messages requiring operator action/response, \$\$BOMSVA is fetched, which in turn transfers control to the SVA.

Entry:

- From a DASD open or close phase.
- From the DTFCP open phases, \$\$BOCP01, \$\$BOCP02, \$\$EOCP11, or \$\$BOCP12.

Exit: To phase 2 of the open error message writer, \$\$BOMSG2, or to \$\$BOMSVA (see <u>VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference:</u> LIOCS Volume 2) .

<u>Method:</u> The calling phase supplies the following information to the message writer:

- Register 0 contains the last four characters in the name of the phase requesting the message. On cancel messages, register 0 need not be initialized. \$\$BO is assumed for the first four characters of the phase name.
- Register 2 contains the address of the DTF table for the current file.

- Register 3 contains the message code (in binary) for the message to be printed. This code is converted to the last two digits of the message number (xx in the example 4nxxI).
- Transient region + 1185 contains the numeric decimal value assigned to the various open/close phases for message numbering. (x in the example 4xnnI.)
- <u>Transient region + 1000</u> contains the start of the CCB.

The message writer overlays the first 888 bytes of the transient region. Any information that the calling phase needs to save is located beyond that point.

This phase first saves the last four characters in the name of the phase requesting the message. It then checks the message type. For action type messages, \$\$BOMSVA is fetched in order to transfer control to the SVA. For information type messages, it initializes the SYSLOG message output area with the organization type numeric code, DTF filename and symbolic unit and constant. It builds the SYSLOG CCWs for writing the message and determines if the required message is in this phase of the message writer. If it is not in this phase, the routine determines in which overlay phase the message is located (either \$\$BOMSG3, \$\$BOMSG4, \$\$BOMSG6, \$\$BOMSG7, or \$\$BOMSG8) and fetches \$\$BOMSG2 to load the required overlay phase.

\$\$BOMSG2: Disk Open Error Message Writer,
Phase 2 Charts FK-FL

<u>Objectives:</u> To issue informational error message to the operator, and to cancel the job if the message indicates end of job.

Entry: From phase 1 of the disk open error
message writer, \$\$BOMSG1.

Exit:

 To the DASD open/close organization phase requesting the message.

Method: \$\$BOMSG1 supplied the following
information to this phase:

- <u>Register</u> 1 contains the name (last four characters) of the message overlay phase to be fetched if the required message appears in scme phase other than \$\$BOMSG1.
- <u>Register</u> 3 contains the address of the message to be written on SYSLOG.

This routine determines if the message to be written on SYSLOG is in storage. If the message is not in storage, the message overlay phase containing the required message is loaded into storage. The message overlay phases consist of \$\$BOMSG3, \$\$BOMSG4, \$\$BOMSG5, \$\$BOMSG6, \$\$BOMSG7, \$\$BOMSG8, and \$\$BOMSG9. These phases contain messages only. The message is then moved to the SYSLOG output area, and an SVC 0 is issued to type the message.

Then, a test determines if the job control open switch (in communications region) is on. If so, an SVC 11 is issued to return to job control. If the switch is not on, an SVC 6 is issued and the job is canceled.

Figure 16 shows the message code (passed via register 3) together with the last two digits and action indicator of the associated message number. For reference purposes, the text of the message is also included.

\$\$BODSMW Data <u>Security Message Writer Chart</u> FM

<u>Objective:</u> To issue message 4n99D and read the reply from the operator.

Entry: From \$\$BODSPW, \$\$BOIS06, \$\$BORTV1,
and return from \$\$BODSPV.

Exit: To \$\$BOMSVA (see VSE/Advanced
Functions Diagnosis Reference: LIOCS Volume
2).

Method: After gathering preliminary data
about the calling routine, \$\$BOMSVA is
fetched to transfer control to the SVA.

	Message Number	
0	44A	OVERLAP CN UNEXPRD FILE
1	55A	WRONG PACK, MOUNT nnnnnn
2	40A	EXTENT OVERLAPS ANOTHER
3	41A	EXTENT OVERLAP ON VTOC
4	42A	NO MATCHING EXTENT
5	33A	EQUAL FILE ID IN VTOC
6	66A	1 TRACK USER LBL EXTENT
7	59A	INVALID EXTENT
15	84D	NEED FILE PROTECT RNG
16	31D	VOLUME SEQUENCE ERROR
17	38D	USER HDR LBL IS NOT STD
18	39D	USER TRL LBL IS NOT STD
19	080	NO UTLO FILE MARK FOUND
20	47A	EXTENTS NOT ON SAME UNIT
21	86D	TAPE UNIT NOT READY
22	001	NO RECORD FOUND
23	011	NO RECORD FOUND
24	021	NO RECORD FOUND
25	031	NO RECORD FOUND
26	041	NO RECORD FOUND
27	051	NO RECORD FOUND
28	061	NO RECORD FOUND
29	07I	NO RECORD FOUND
31	091	NO RECORD FOUND
32	001	NO LABEL SPACE IN VTOC
33	011	NO FORMAT 1 LABEL FOUND
34	021	NO FORMAT 2 LABEL FOUND
35	031	NO FORMAT 3 LABEL FOUND
36 	 04I 	NO FORMAT 4 LBL IN VTOC

<u>Note:</u> A- and D-type messages are not issued by \$\$BOMSG1 or \$\$BOMSG 2, but by \$IJJGMSG from the SVA.

Figure 16. Message Code for Disk Open Error Message Writer (Part 1 of 3)

	Message Number	 Message
37	061	NO STANDARD VOL1 LABEL
38	41I	EXTENT OVERLAP ON VTOC
39	461	DISCONT INDEX EXTENTS
40	51I	SYSUNITS NOT IN SEQUENCE
41	521	DISCONT TYPE 1 EXTENTS
42	541	DSKXTN ENTRY TABLE FULL
143	621	NO PRIME DATA EXTENT
44	45I	TOO MANY EXTENTS
45	49I	DATA TRACK LIMIT INVALID
46	591	INVALID EXTENT
147	6 0 I	NO EXTENTS, ALL BYPASSED
48	611	INVALID DLBL FUNCTION
49	631	LOAD FILE NOT CLOSED
50	801	INVALID FILE TYPE
51	811	NO LABEL INFORMATION
152	831	INVALID LOGICAL UNIT
153	901	NO JIBS AVAILABLE
54	871	SYS FILE EXTENT EXCEEDED
55	35I	DELETED WORKFILE LABEL
156	 34I	CURRENT FILE LBL DELETED
57	401	EXTENT OVERLAPS ANOTHER
 58 	 36I 	NO MORE AVAIL/MATCH XTNT

	Message Number	Message
59	481	SYSIN/SYSOUT UNSUPPORTED
60	70I	1ST XTNT CD NOT INDX VOL
61	711	EXTENT INFO NEEDED
62	721	MOD AND DTF INCOMPATIBLE
63	58I	NO EXTENT FOR OUTPUT FILE
64	881	EOF ON SYSTEM FILE
67	911	NO ASCII SUPPORTED SUPVR.
68	981	OVLAP UNEXPRD SECRD FILE
69	691	FILE IS OPEN FOR ADD
70	971	OVLAP EXPIRED SECRD FILE
71	851	INVALID FORMAT RECORD
74	301	INVALID HDR1 LABEL
7 5	331	EQUAL FILE ID VTOC
76	37I	CHAINING TO SYSTEM UNIT
77	31I	VOLUME SEQUENCE ERROR
80	821	ISAM NULL FILE
82	74I	BLKSIZE OPEN FAILURE
83	7 51	BLKSZ NOT MULT OF RECSZ
85	78I	NO LOGIC MODULE
86	7 9I	GETVIS FAILED
87	05I	UNRECOVERABLE I/O ERROR

Message Code for Disk Open Error Message Writer (Part 2 of 3) Figure 16.

Message Code for Disk Open Error Message Writer (Part 3 of 3) Figure 16.

CHARTS

Explanation of Flowchart Symbols

EXAMPLE DESCRIPTION A group of program instructions that perform a processing function of the program. The label, if any, is shown above the block. B2 IF ANY ADDITIONAL EXPLANATION IS REQUIRED, ITS LOCATION ON THE CHART IS DENTIFIED BY AN ASTERISK AND THE BLOCK ID. Description or title of a routine that is detailed on another flowchart. The starting label of the routine and the flowchart ID appear SUBROUT INE above the stripe. An instruction, or group of instructions, that changes portion of a routine or initializes a routine for a given condition. X *****D4******** A group of operations not detailed in the flowcharts in this manual, such as user rou-PROCESS THE RECORD USEX15 Any function of an input/output device or program, usually branching to an I/O routine USER INPUT/DUTPUT to perform the function stated in the block. Points where the program branches to alternate processing, based upon variable con-ditions such as program switch settings and * MODIEY DECISION * G4 *.X **ALL RECORDS** NO ** PROCESSED **. The beginning or end of a program or routine. TERMINAL On-page connector. An entry from or an exit to another function on the same flowchart. The location in the connector identifies the END-OF-JOB block to which entry on a chart is made. Off-page connector. An entry from, or exit to, a given point on another flowchart. The characters in the connector identify the chart and block to which or from which control is passed. The corresponding label, if any, is placed outside the outgoing connector. For multiple entries, an asterisk is placed in the

connector and the locations from which control is passed are listed nearby.

Chart 01. Open Monitor

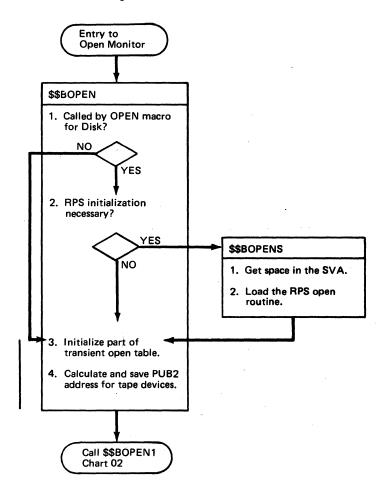


Chart 02. Open Monitor

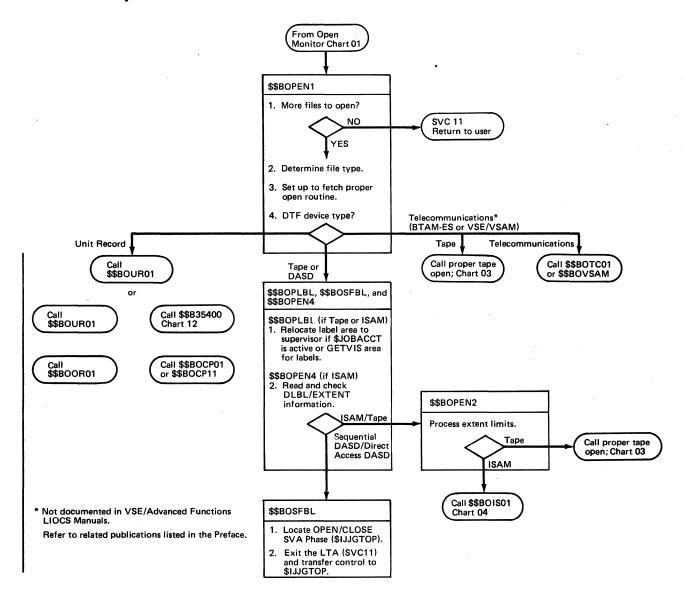


Chart 03. Open Magnetic Tape

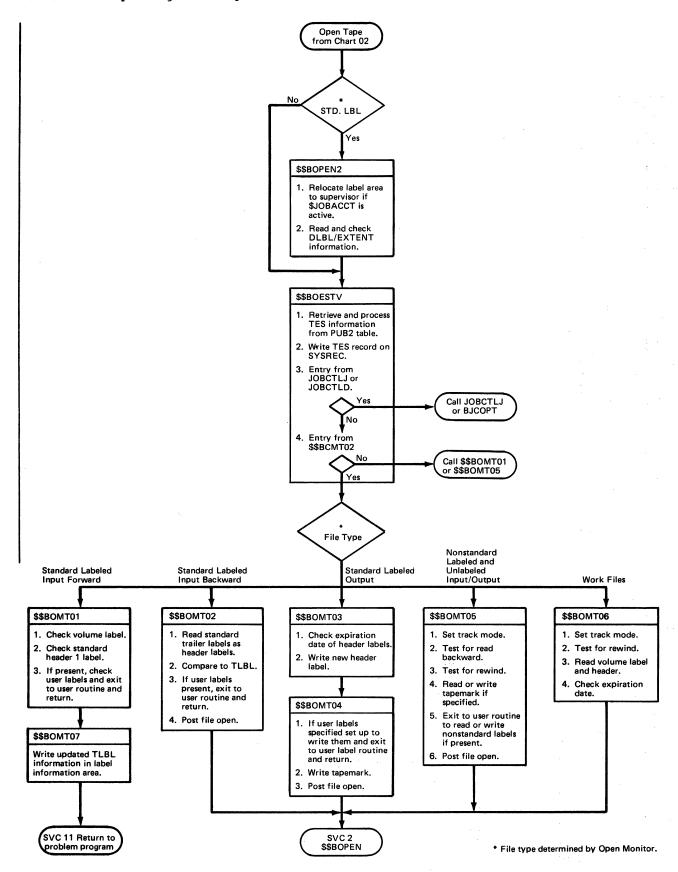


Chart 04. Open ISAM

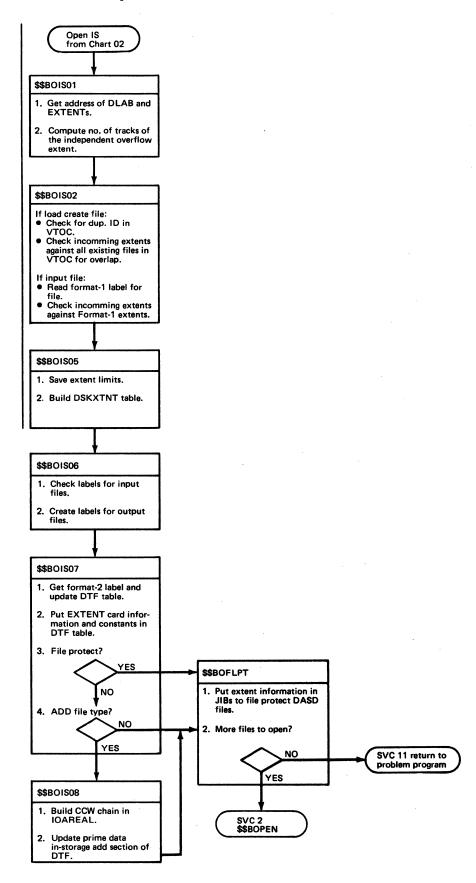


Chart 05. Close Monitor

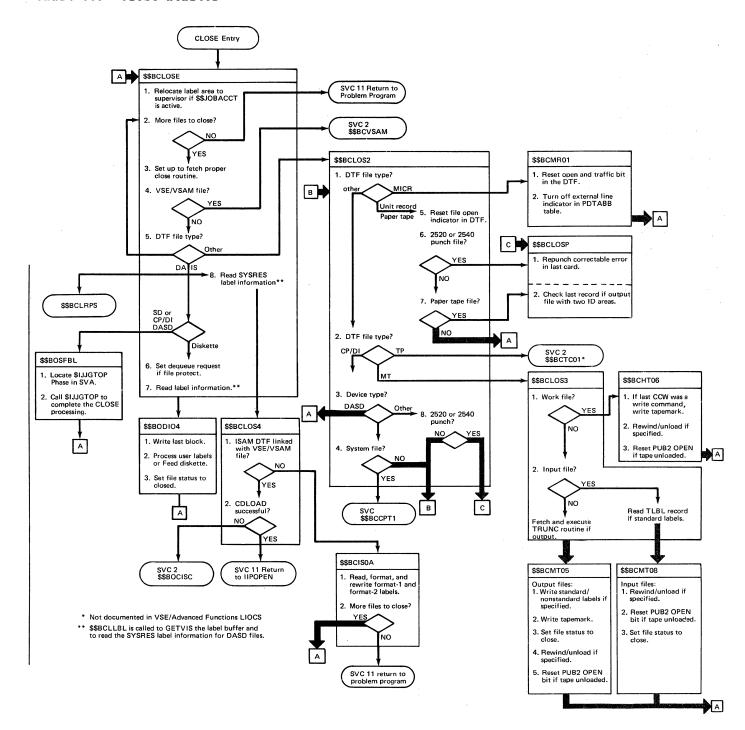


Chart 06. EOF/EOV Routine

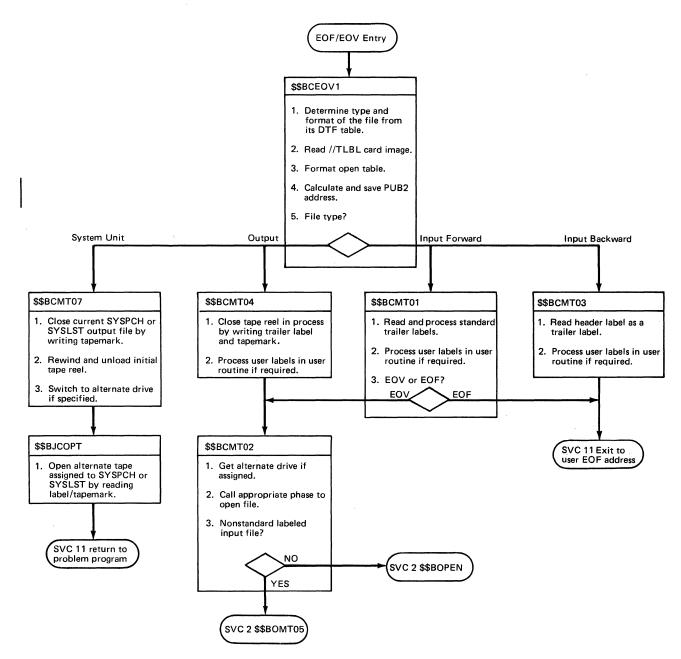


Chart 07. Open Diskette, Input

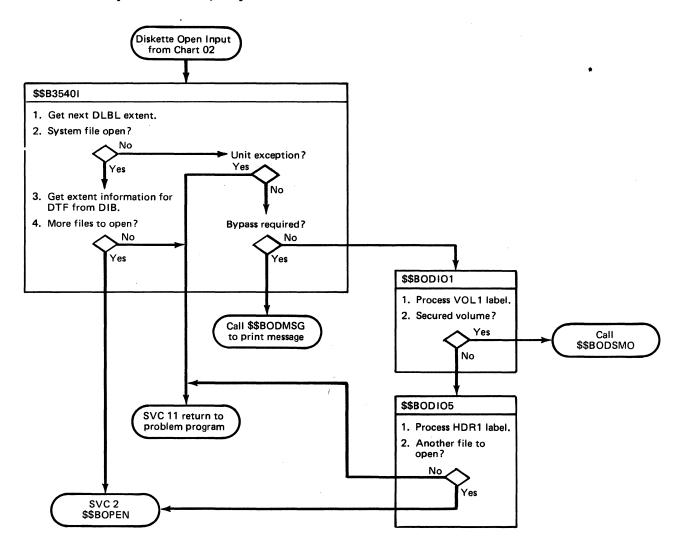


Chart 08. Open Diskette, Output

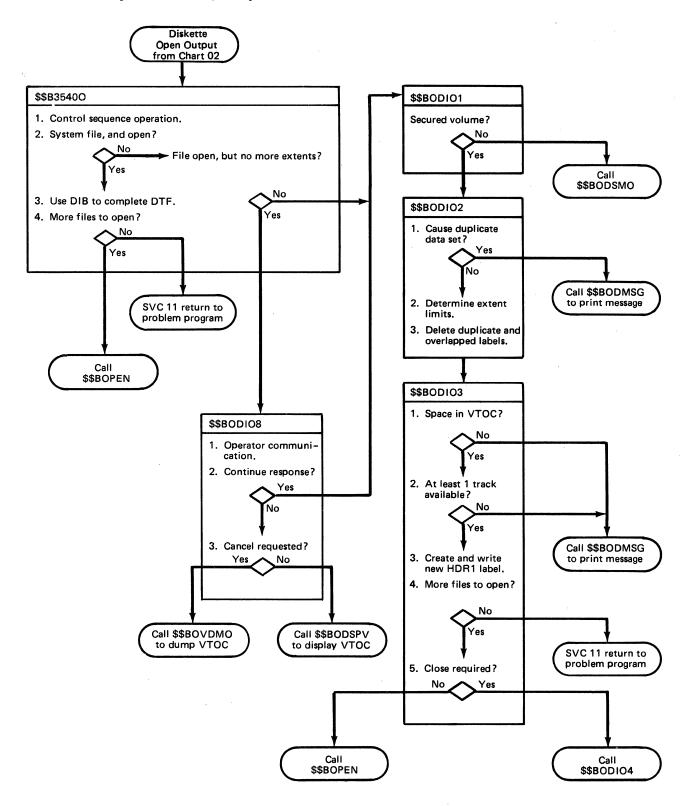


Chart AA. \$\$BOPEN: Open Monitor (Part 1 of 2)

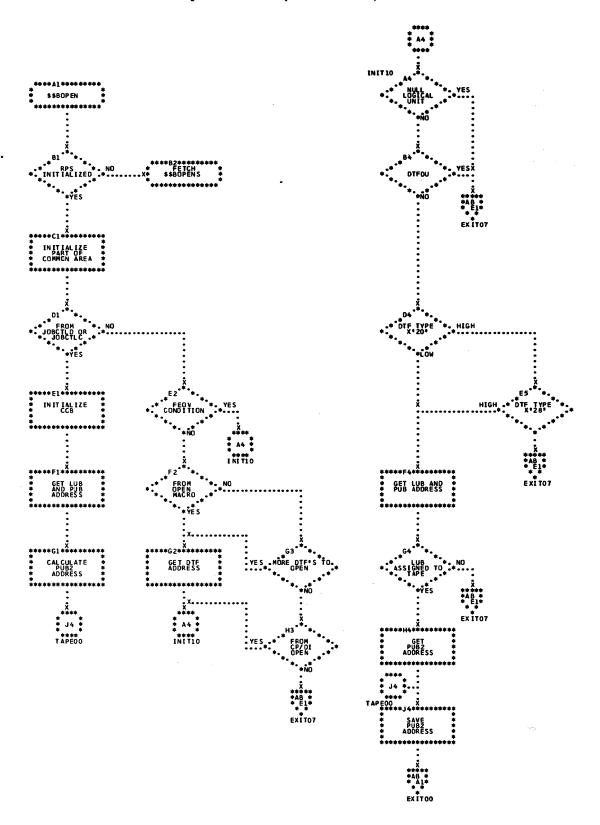


Chart AB. \$\$BOPEN: Open Monitor (Part 2 of 2)

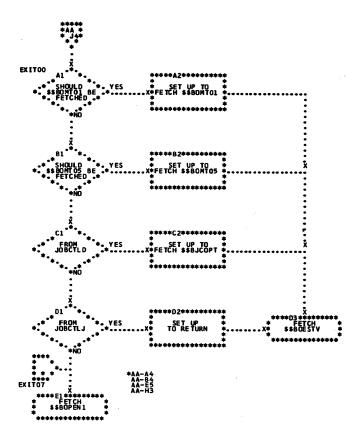


Chart AE. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 1 of 6)

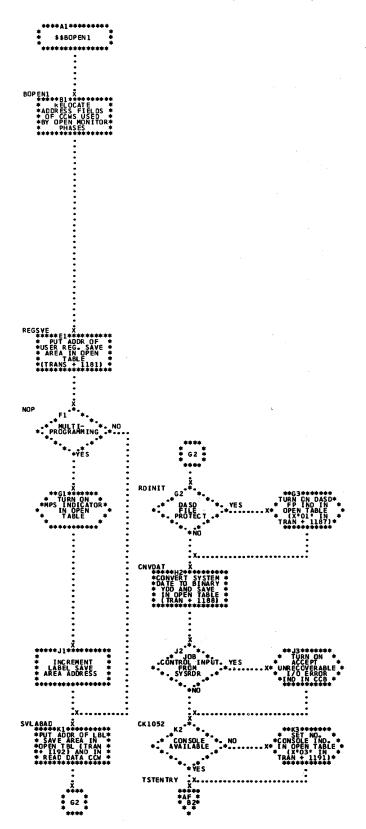


Chart AF. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 2 of 6)

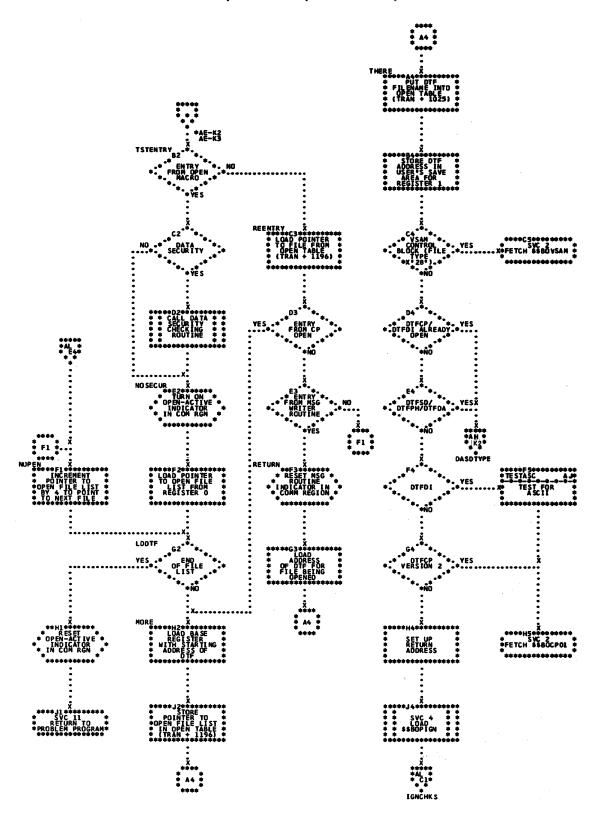


Chart AG. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 3 of 6)

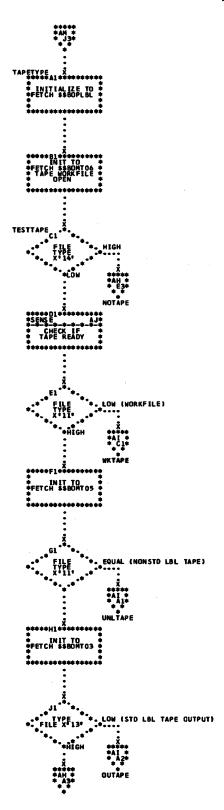


Chart AH. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 4 of 6)

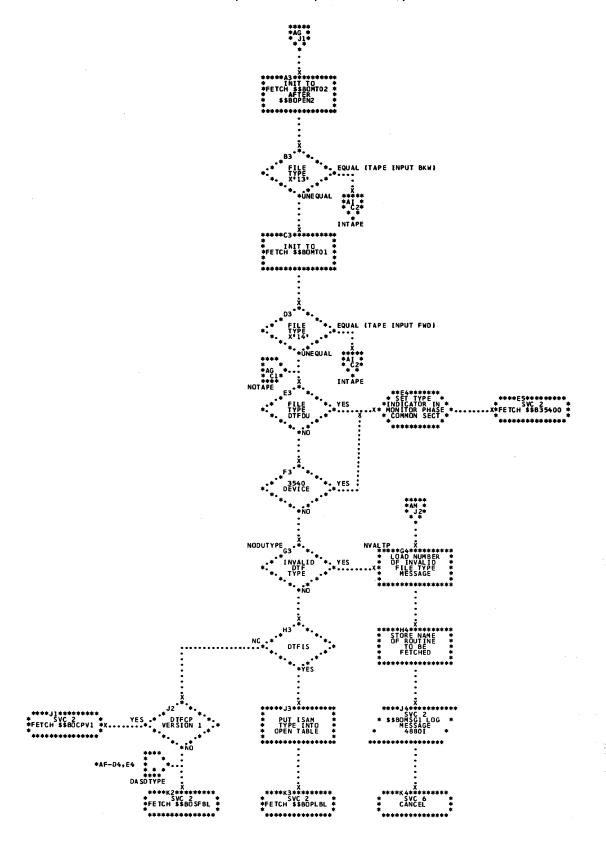


Chart AI. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 5 of 6)

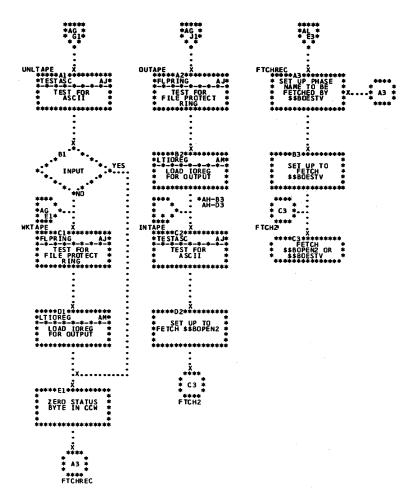


Chart AJ. \$\$BOPEN1 Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 6 of 6)

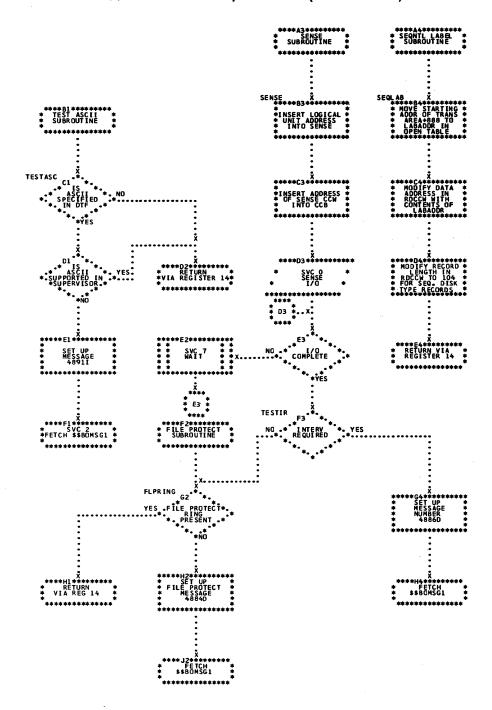


Chart AK. \$\$BOPLBL: Open Monitor Label Space Processing

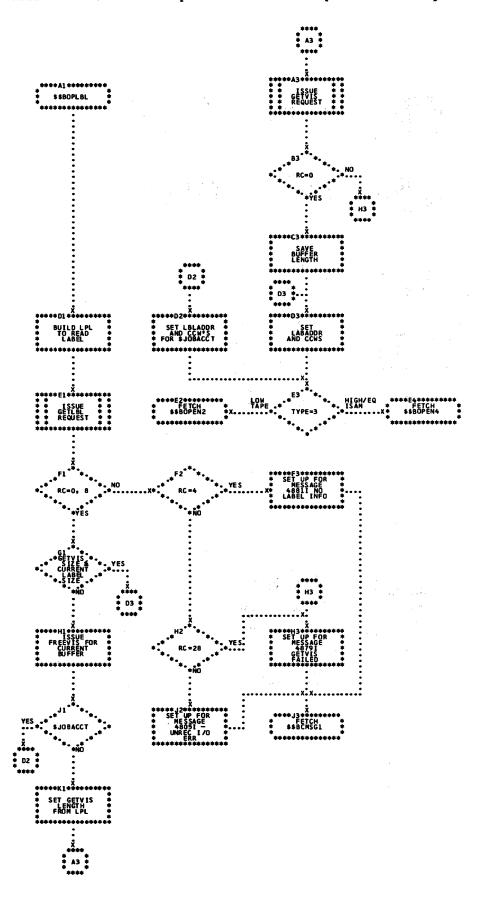


Chart AL. \$\$BOPIGN: Open Ignore (Part 1 of 2)

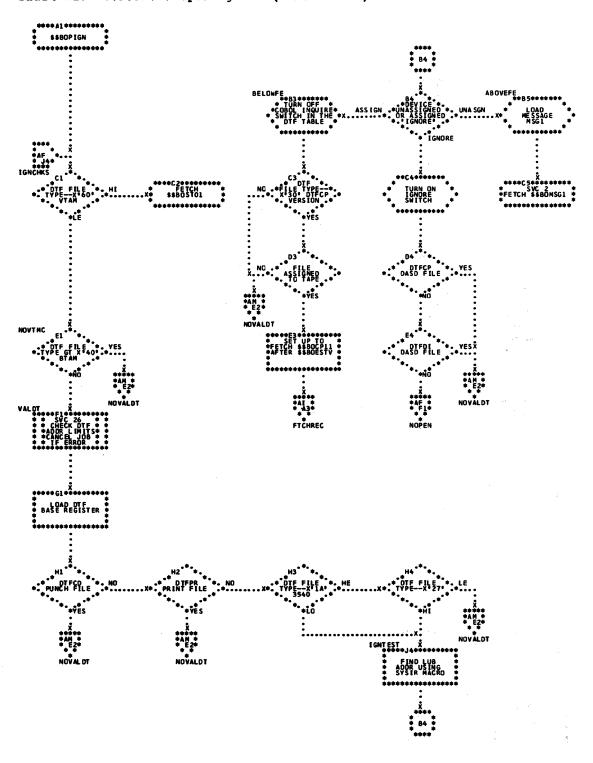


Chart AM. \$\$BOPIGN: Open Ignore (Part 2 of 2)

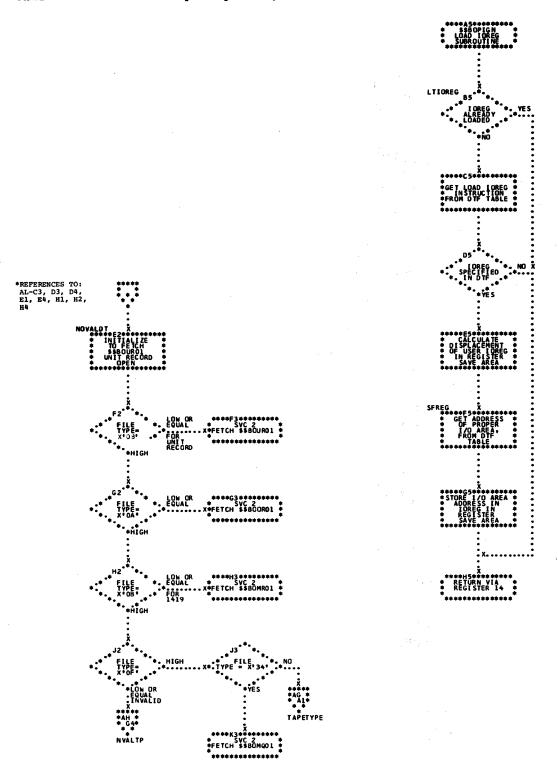


Chart AN. \$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 3)

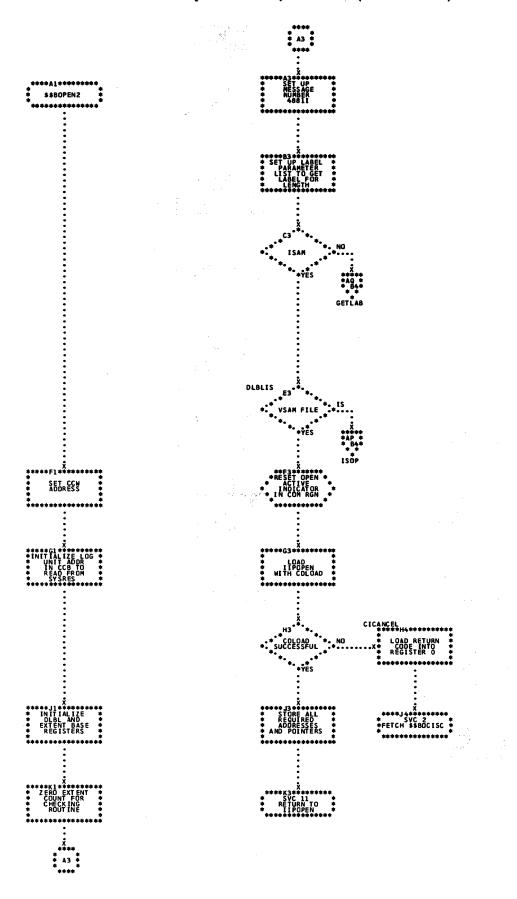


Chart AP. \$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 3)

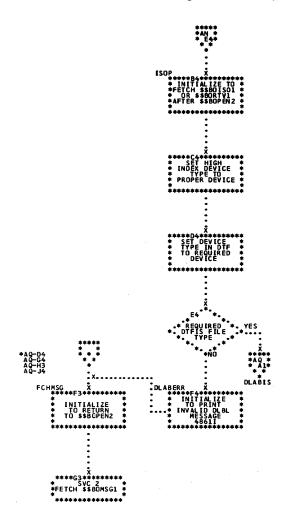


Chart AQ. \$\$BOPEN2: Open Monitor, Phase 2 (Part 3 of 3)

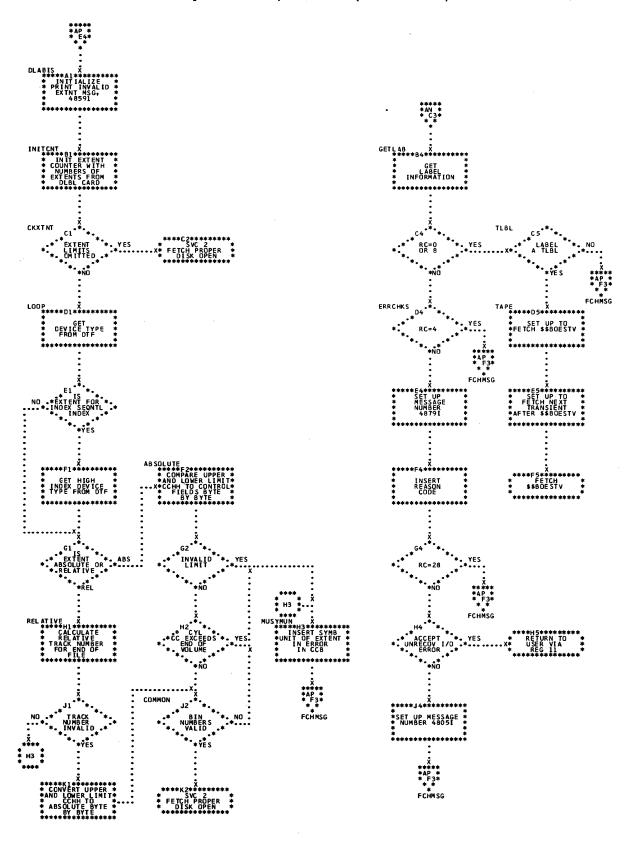


Chart AS. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF Address Constants (Part 1 of 4)

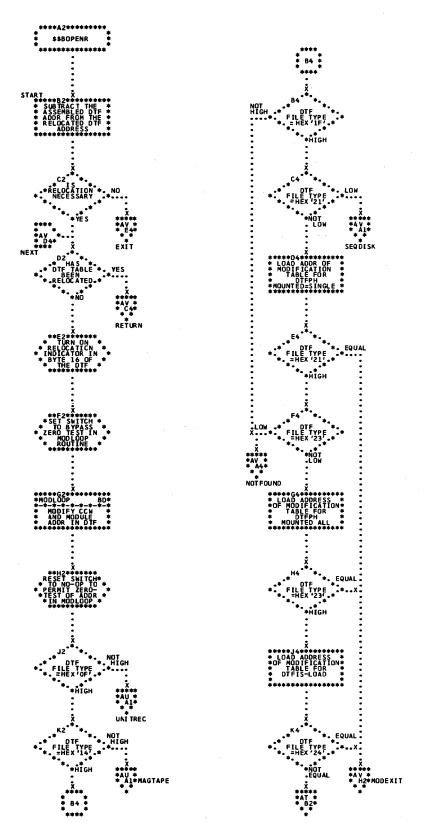


Chart AT. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF Address Constants (Part 2 of 4)

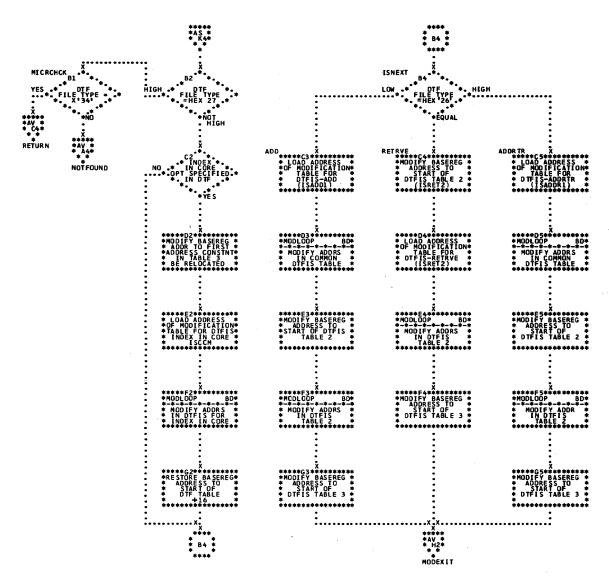


Chart AU. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF Address Constants (Part 3 of 4)

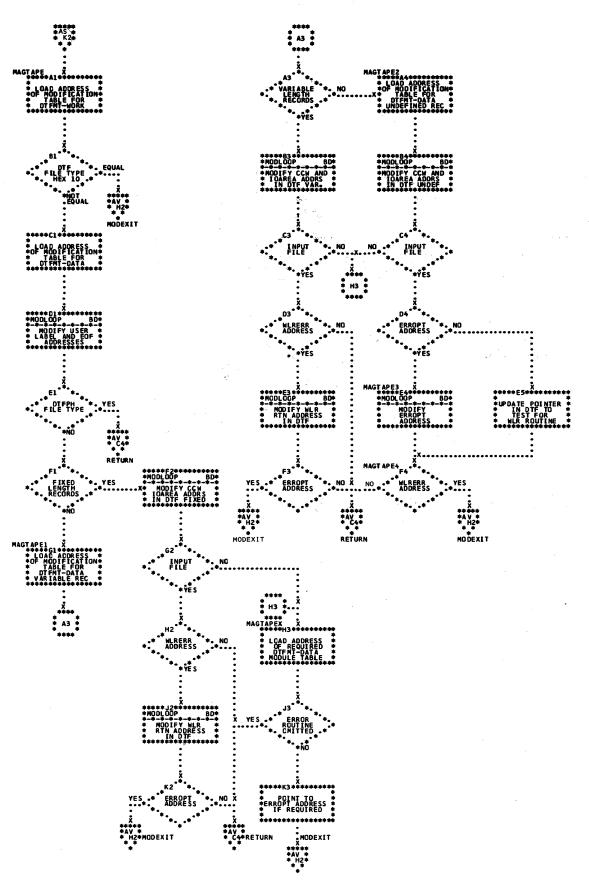


Chart AV. \$\$BOPENR: Relocate DTF Address Constants (Part 4 of 4)

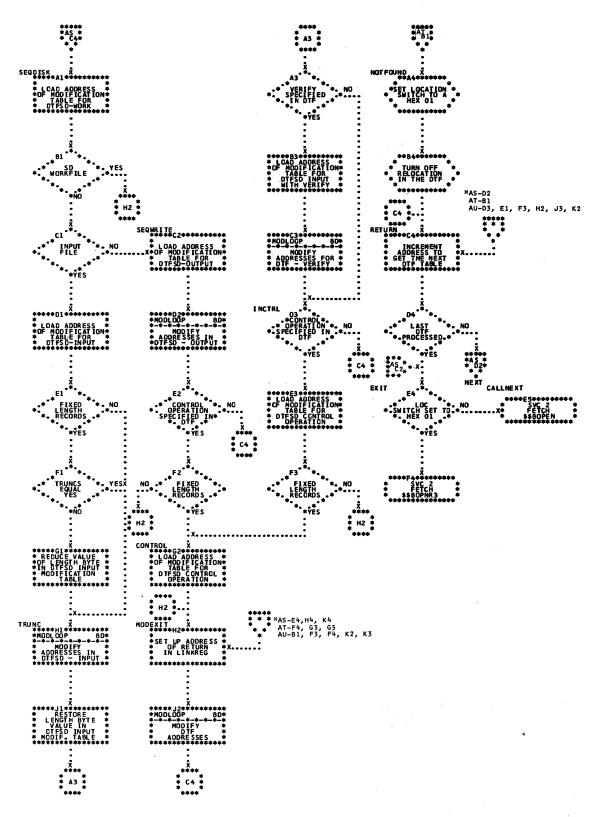


Chart AW. \$\$BOPENC: Check Duplication Device Assignment for Logical Units

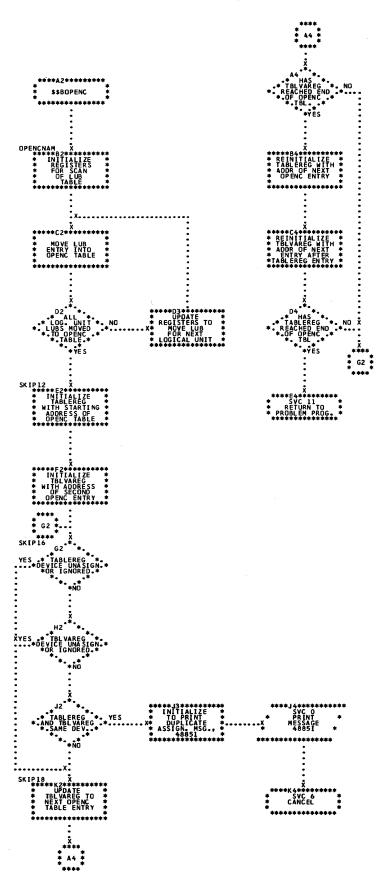


Chart AX. \$\$BENDQB: Enqueue and Dequeue for VSE/VSAM Routines

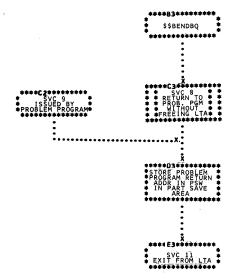


Chart BA. \$\$BCPNR2: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 3)

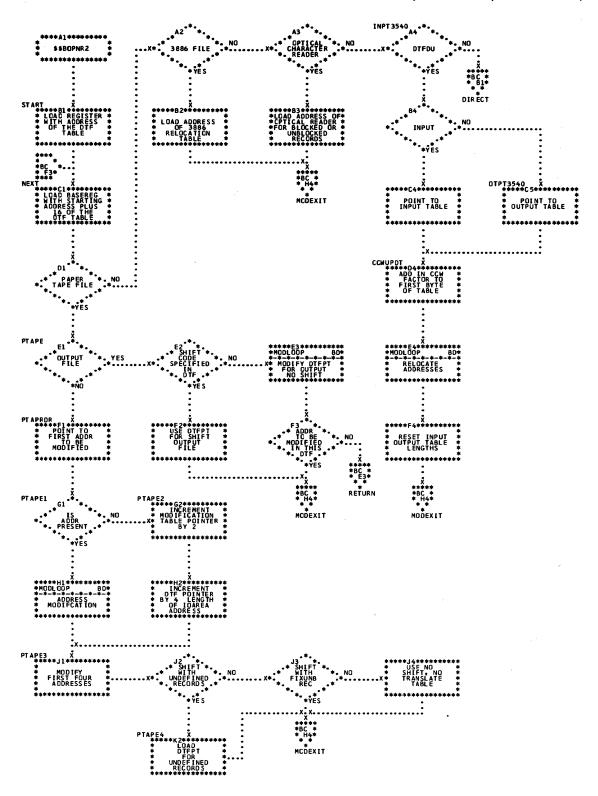


Chart BB. \$\$BOPNR2: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 3)

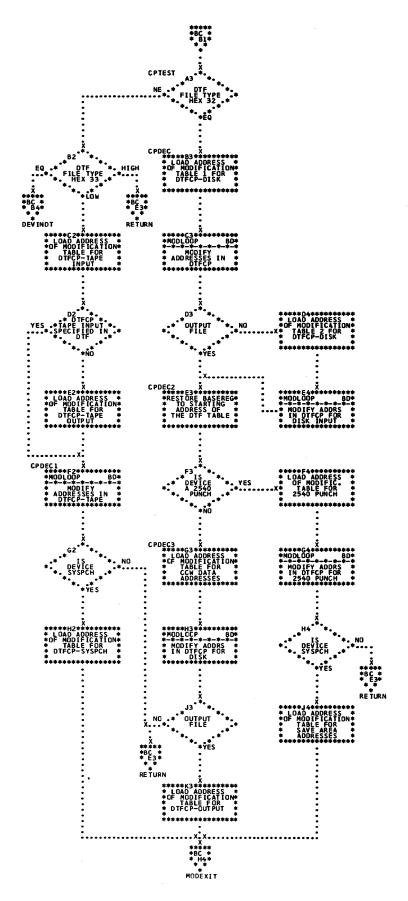


Chart BC. \$\$BOPNR2: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 2 (Part 3 of 3)

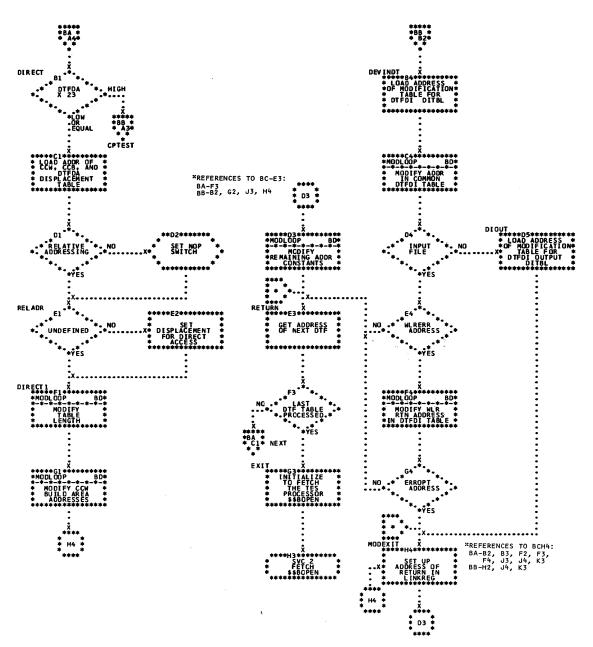


Chart BD. MODLOOP Subroutine to \$\$BOPENR and \$\$BOPNR3

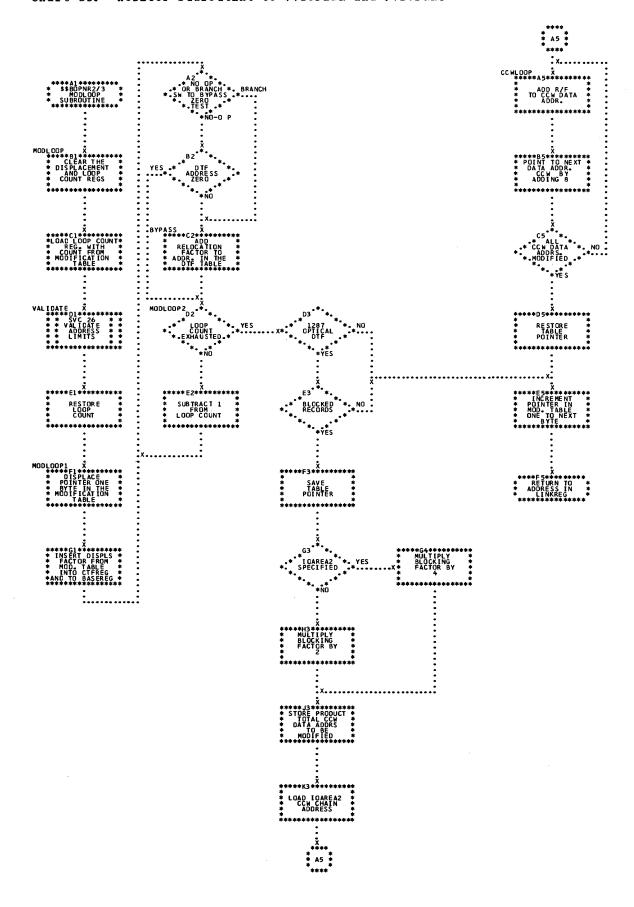


Chart BE. \$\$BCFNR3: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 3 (Part 1 of 2)

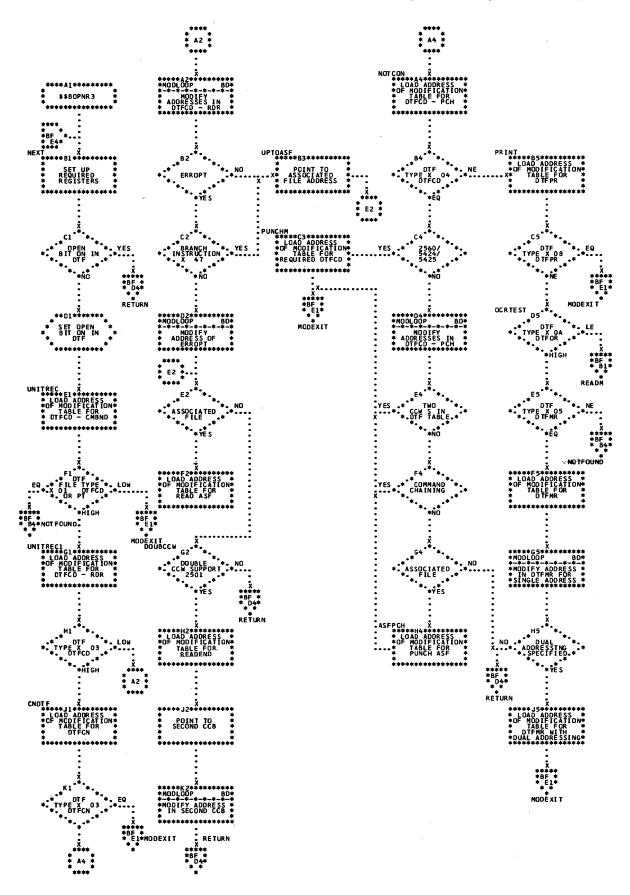


Chart BF. \$\$BOPNR3: Relocate DTF Address Constants, Phase 3 (Part 2 of 2)

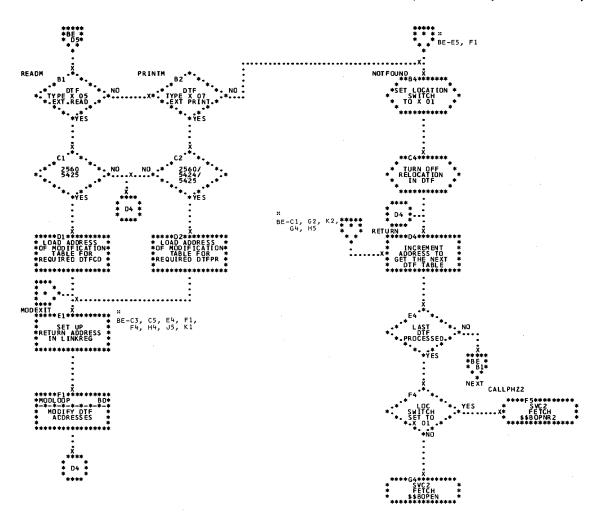


Chart BG. \$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 1 of 3)

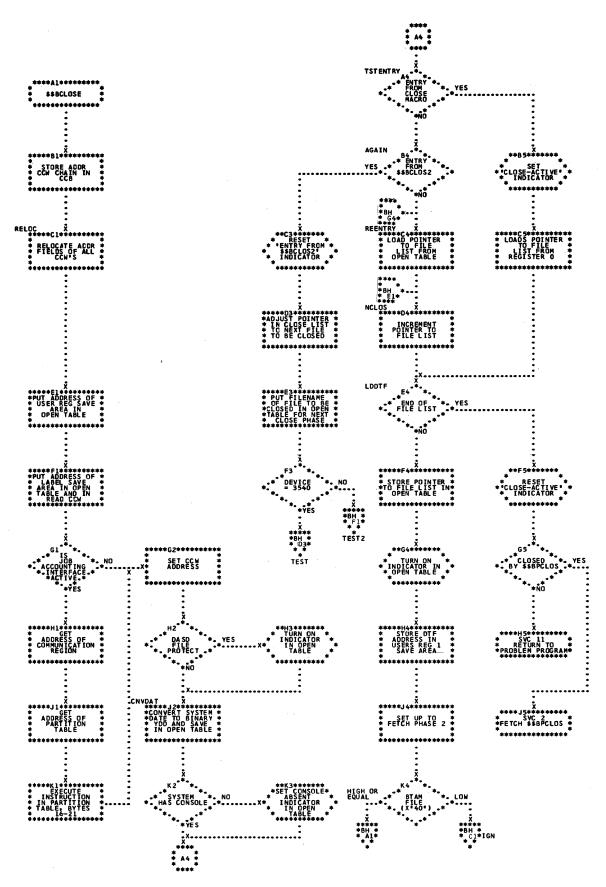


Chart BH. \$\$BCIOSE: Close Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 2 of 3)

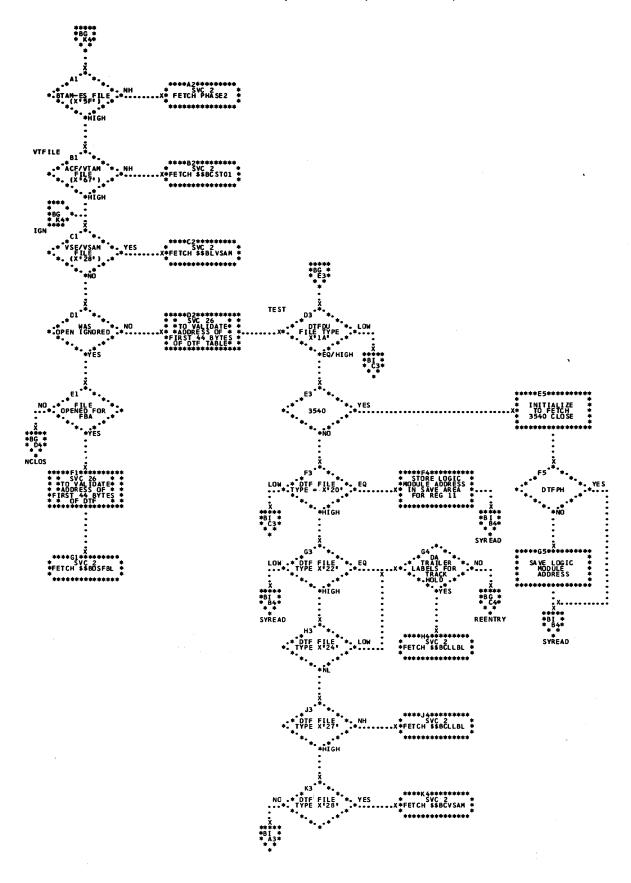


Chart BI. \$\$BCLOSE: Close Monitor, Phase 1 (Part 3 of 3)

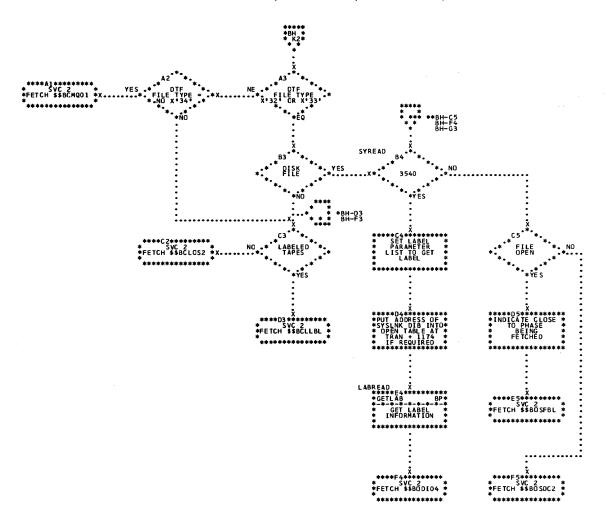


Chart BJ. \$\$BCILBL: Close Monitor Label Space Processing

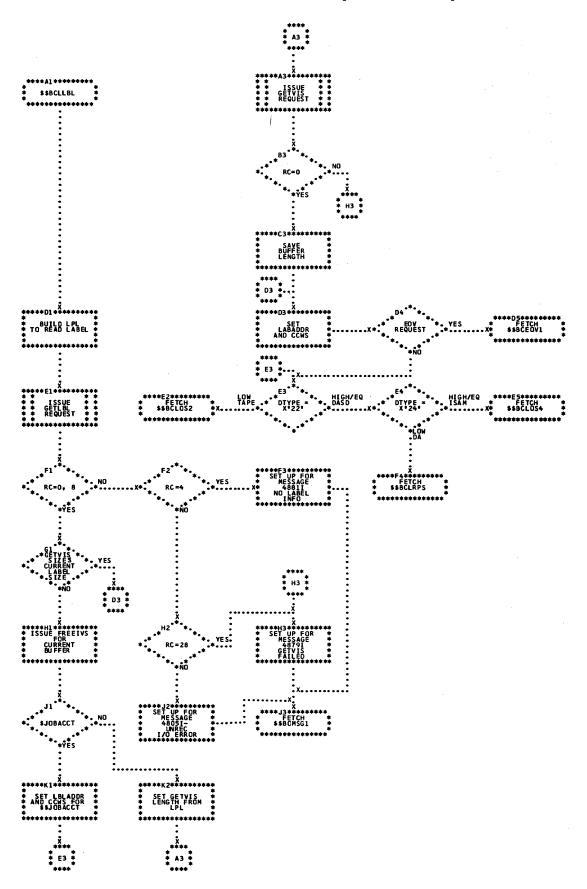


Chart BK. \$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 3)

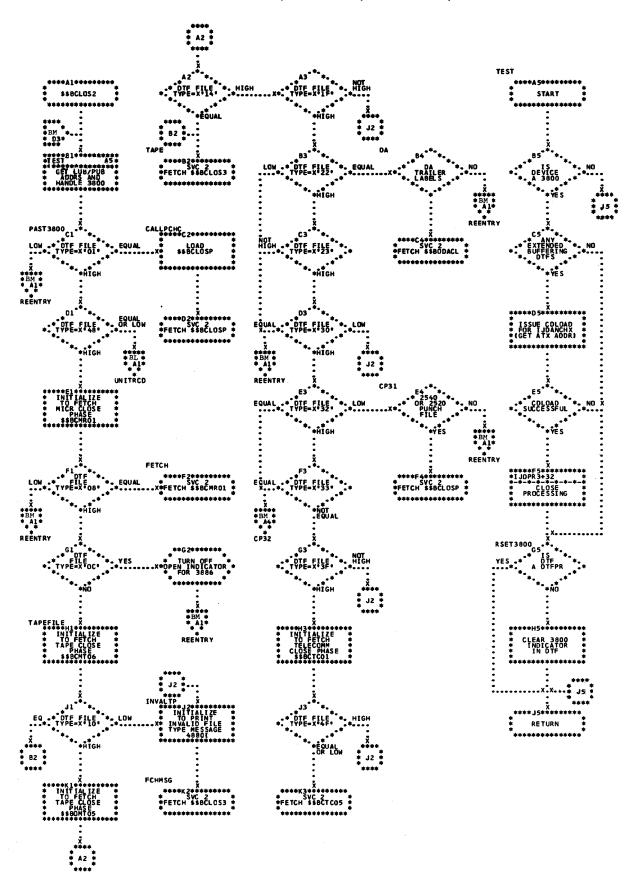


Chart BL. \$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 3)

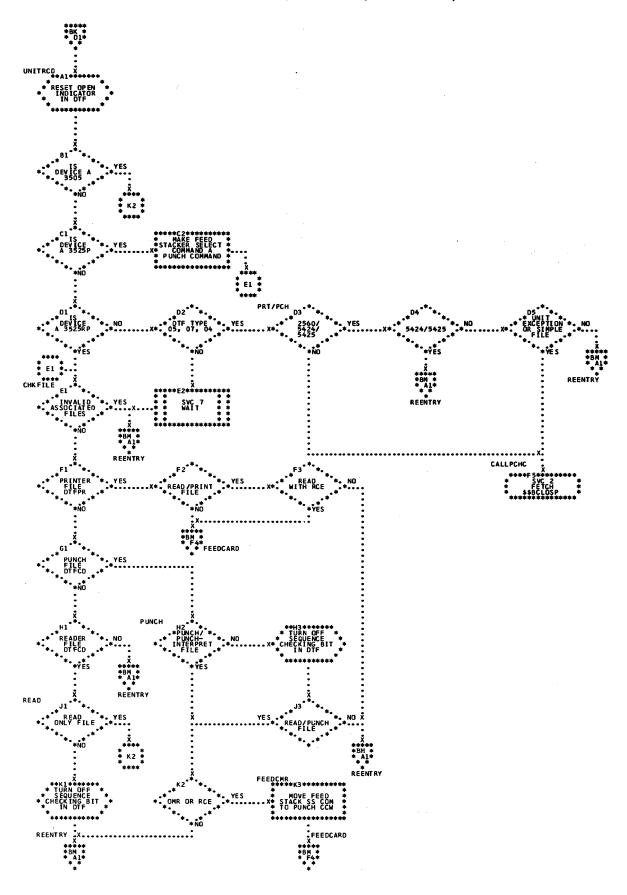


Chart BM. \$\$BCLOS2: Close Monitor, Phase 2 (Part 3 of 3)

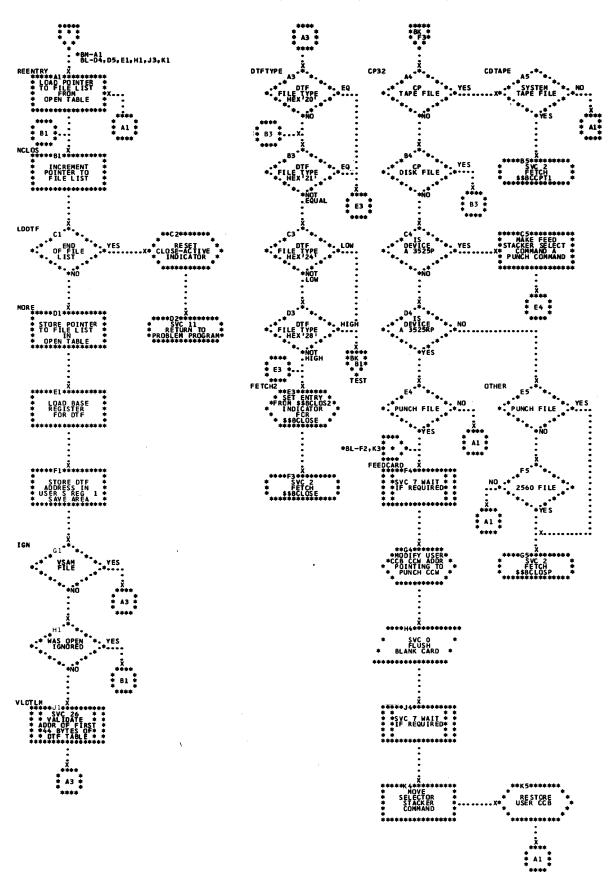


Chart BN. \$\$BCLOS3: Close Monitor, Phase 3

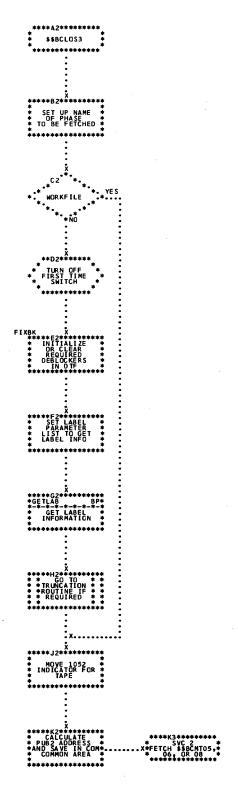


Chart BO. \$\$BCLOS4: Close Monitor, Phase 4

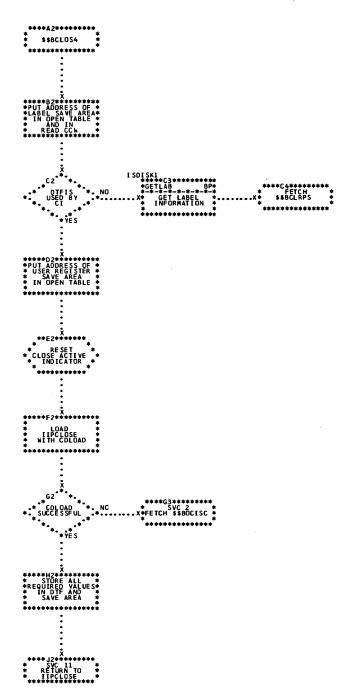


Chart BP. Close Monitor Subroutines

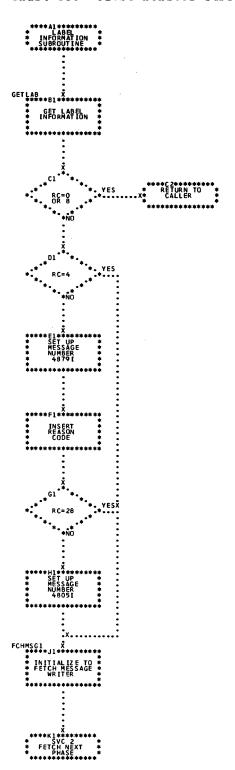


Chart BQ. \$\$BCIRPS: DASD RPS Common Close

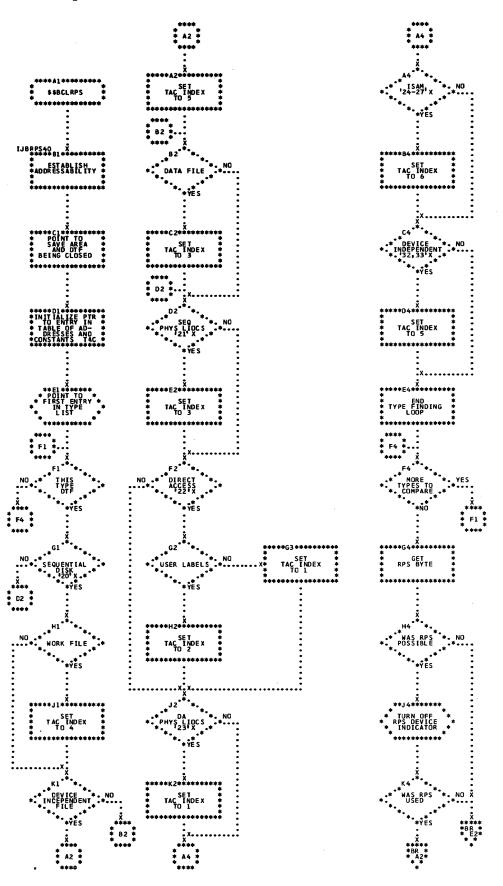


Chart BR. \$\$BCIRPS: DASD RPS Common Close, Restore User's DTF

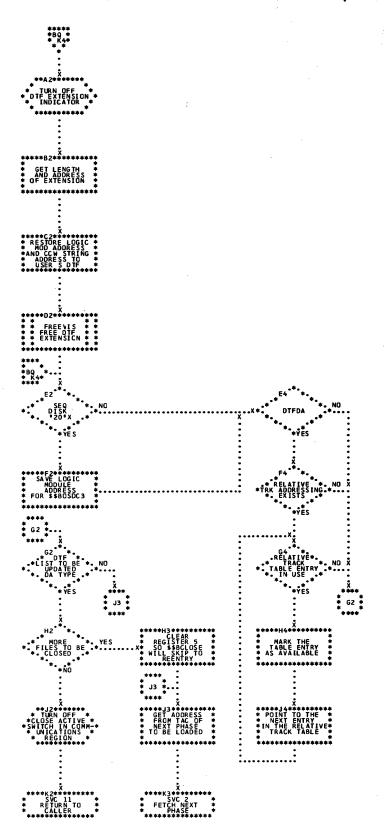


Chart BS. \$\$BOPENS: IOCS and Device Independent I/O Initialization

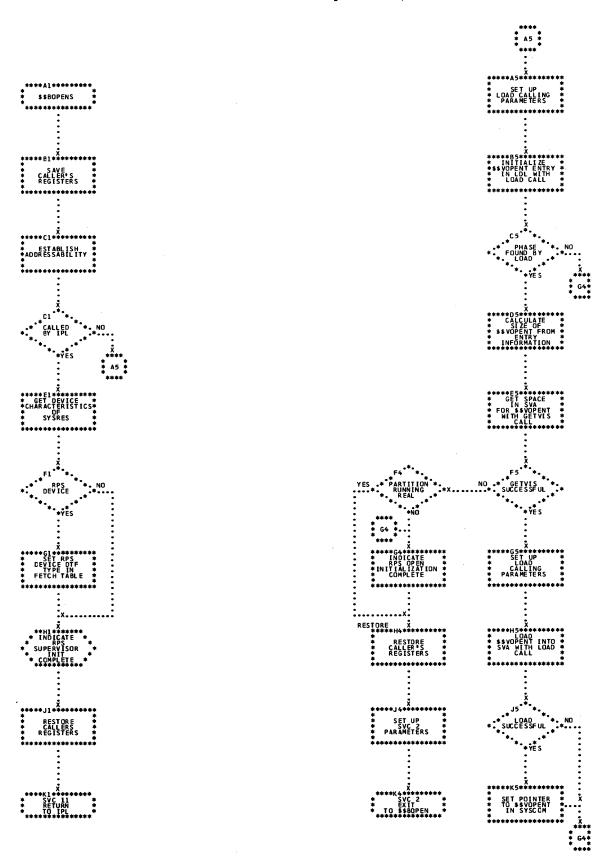


Chart BT. \$\$ VOPENT: IOCS and Device Independent I/O Initialization (Part 1 of 2)

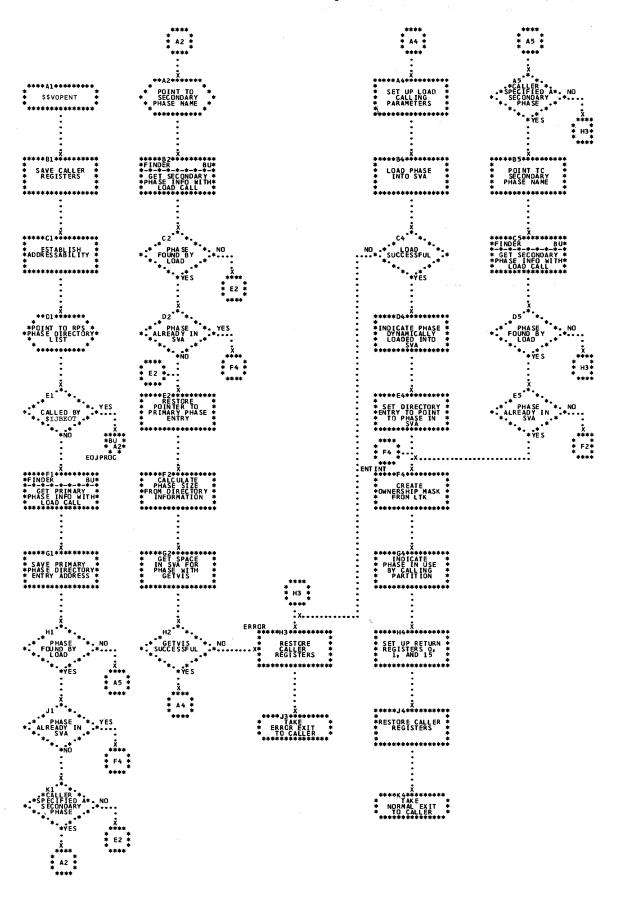


Chart BU. \$\$ VOPENT: IOCS and Device Independent I/O Initialization (Part 2 of 2)

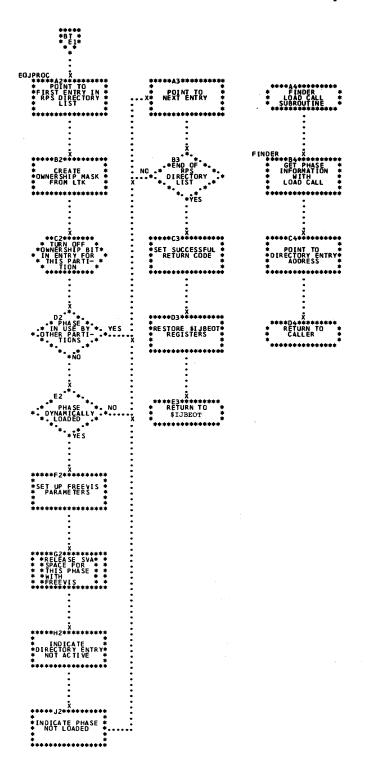


Chart CA. \$\$BOSDC1: SD Close Input and Output (Part 1 of 2)

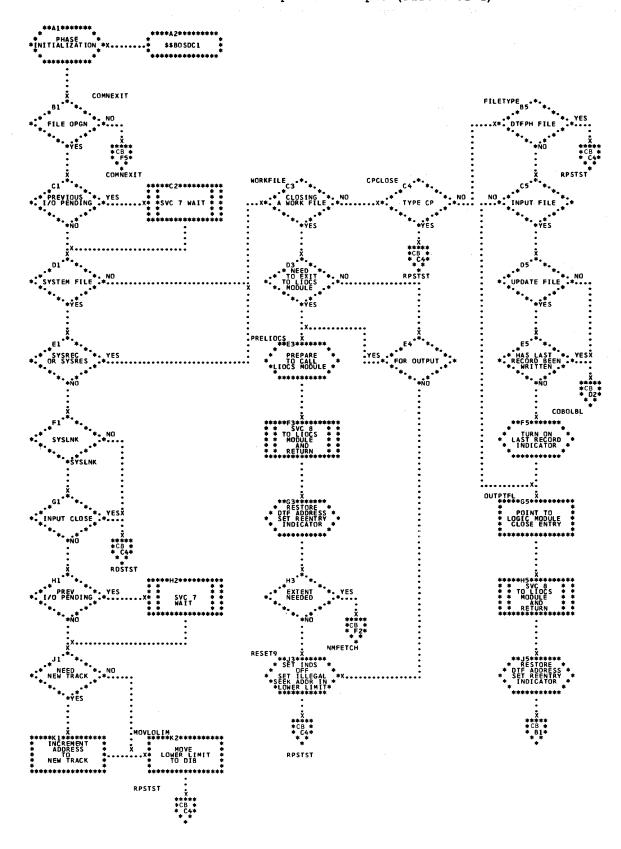


Chart CB. \$\$BOSDC1: SD Close Input and Output (Part 2 of 2)

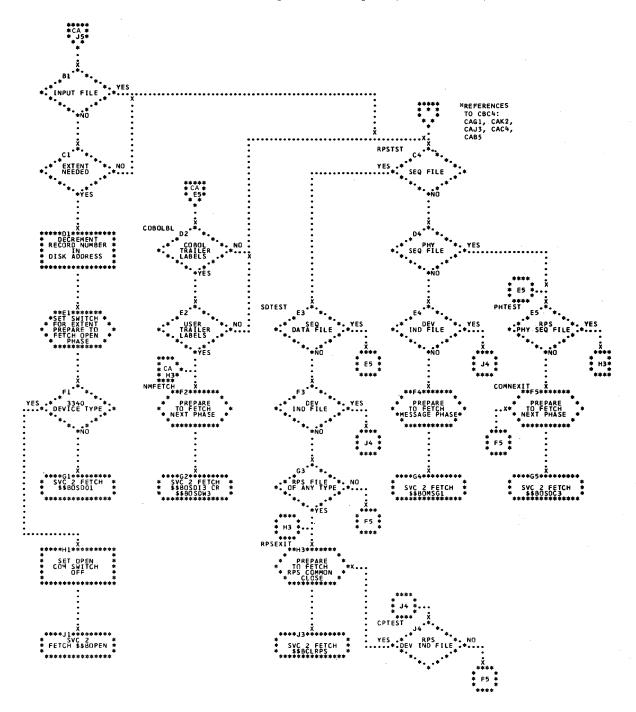


Chart CC. \$\$BOSDC2: Close, Free Track Function

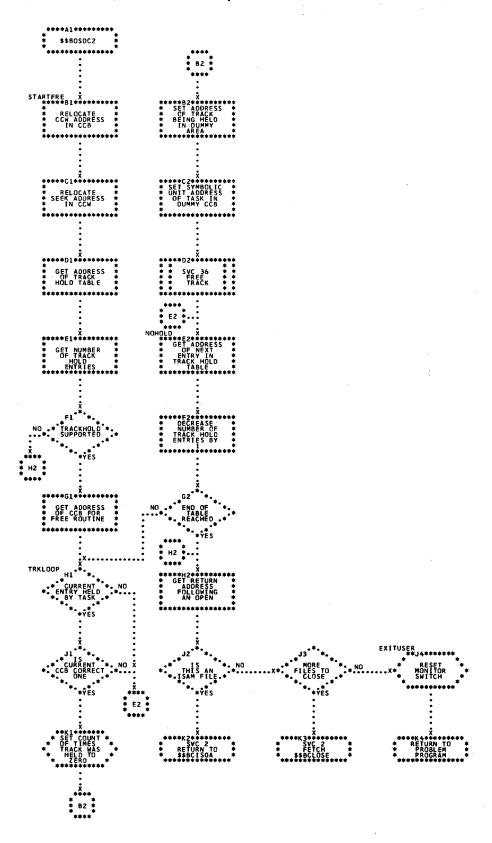


Chart CD. \$\$BOSDEV: Forced End of Volume for Disk

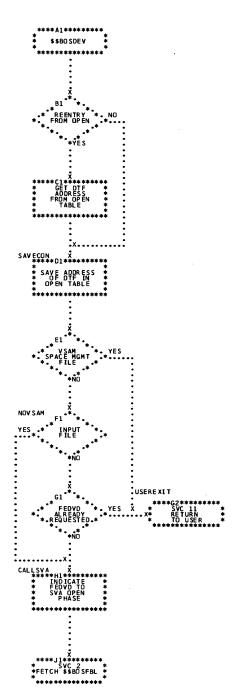


Chart CE. \$\$BODQUE: Dequeue Extent JIBs

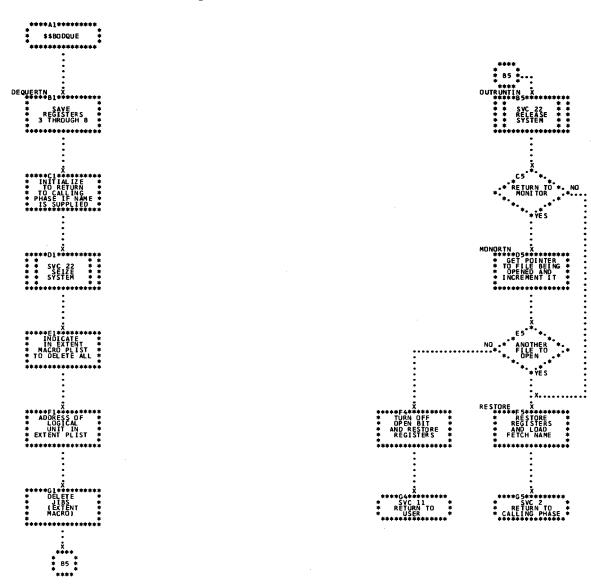


Chart EE. \$\$BRELSE: Dynamic Device Release Transient (Part 1 of 3)

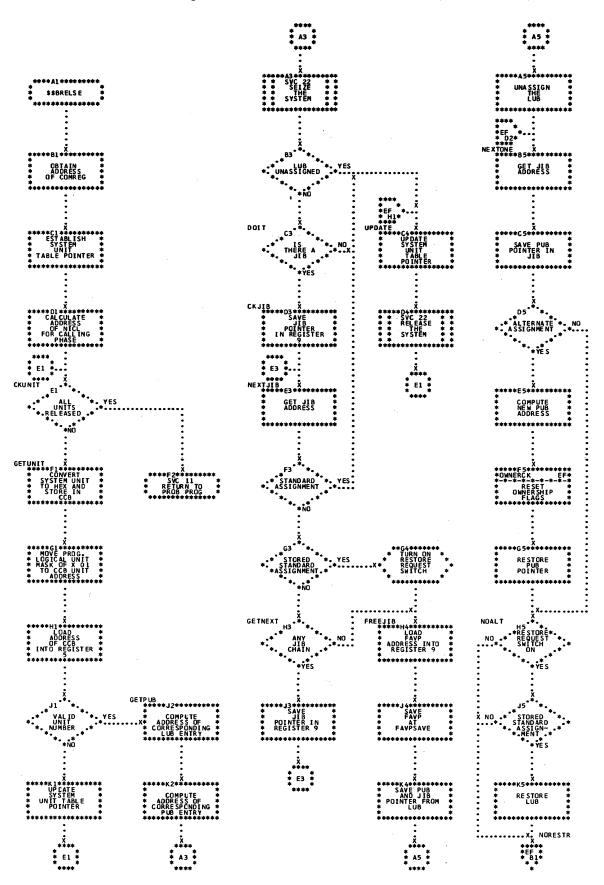


Chart EF. \$\$BRELSE: Dynamic Device Release Transient (Part 2 of 3)

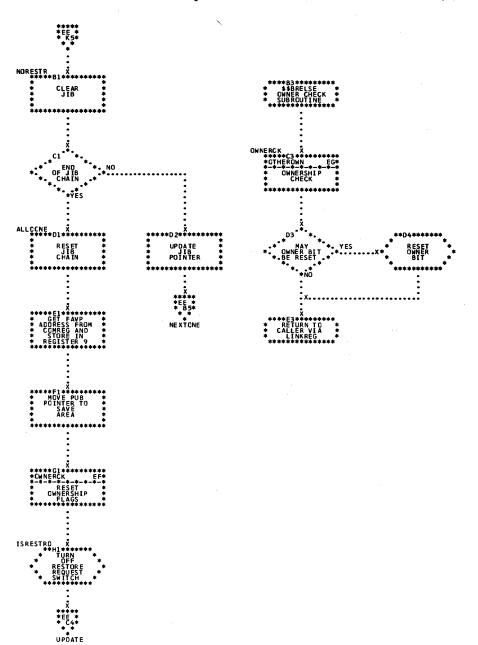


Chart EG. \$\$BRFLSE: Dynamic Device Release Transient (Part 3 of 3)

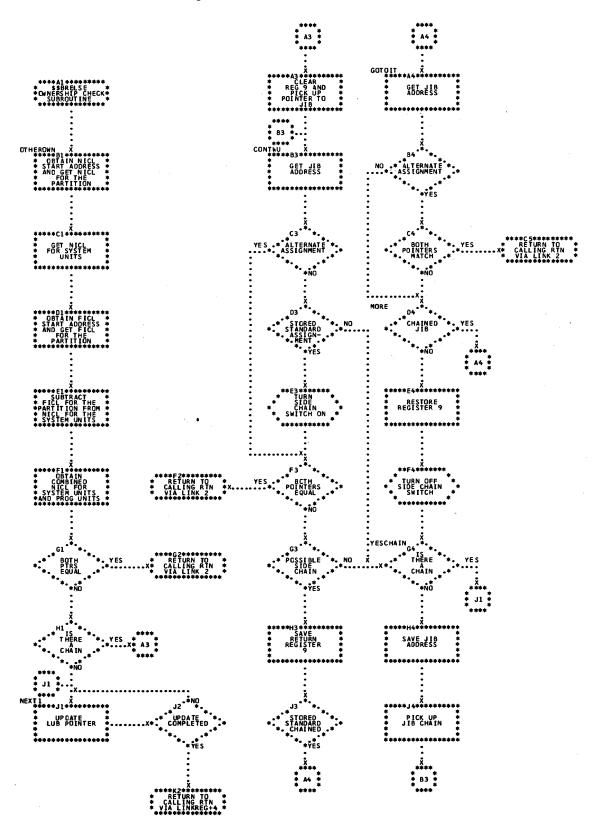


Chart FA. \$\$BOFLPT: DASD File-Protect (Part 1 of 3)

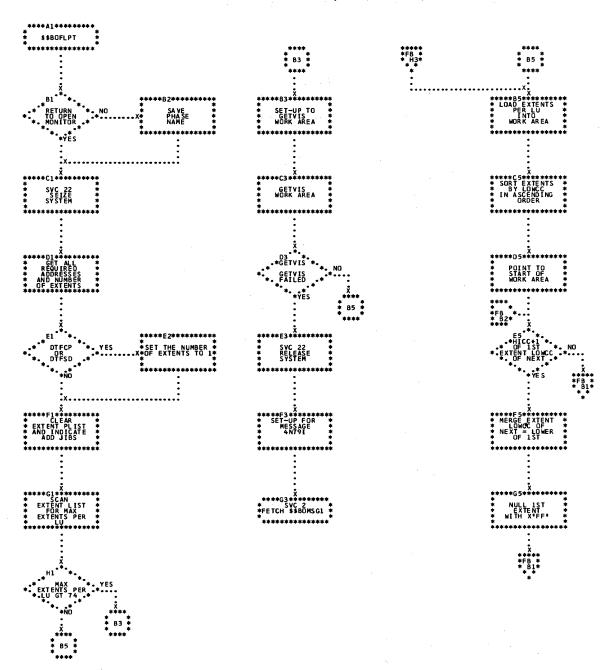


Chart FB. \$\$BOFLPT: DASD File-Protect (Part 2 of 3)

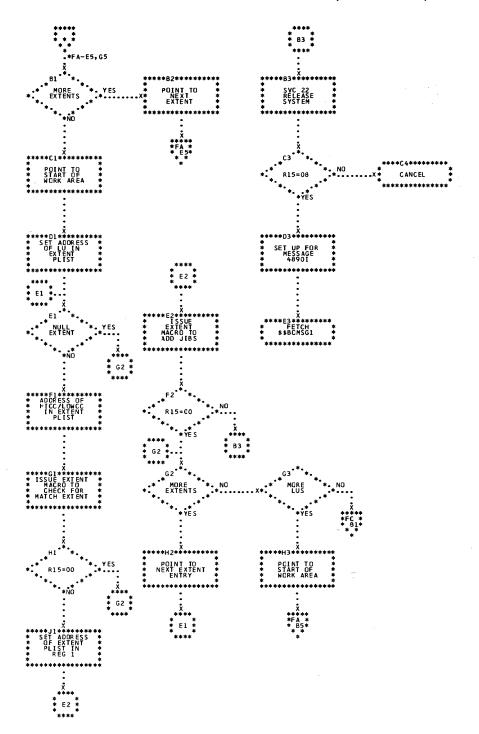


Chart FC. \$\$BOFLPT: DASD File Protect (Part 3 of 3)

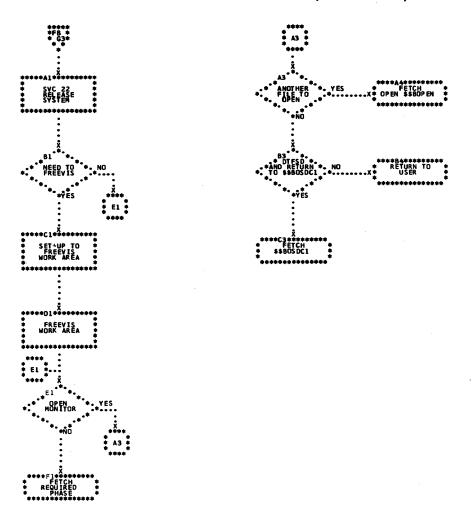


Chart FD. \$\$BODSPV: VTOC Display, Phase 1

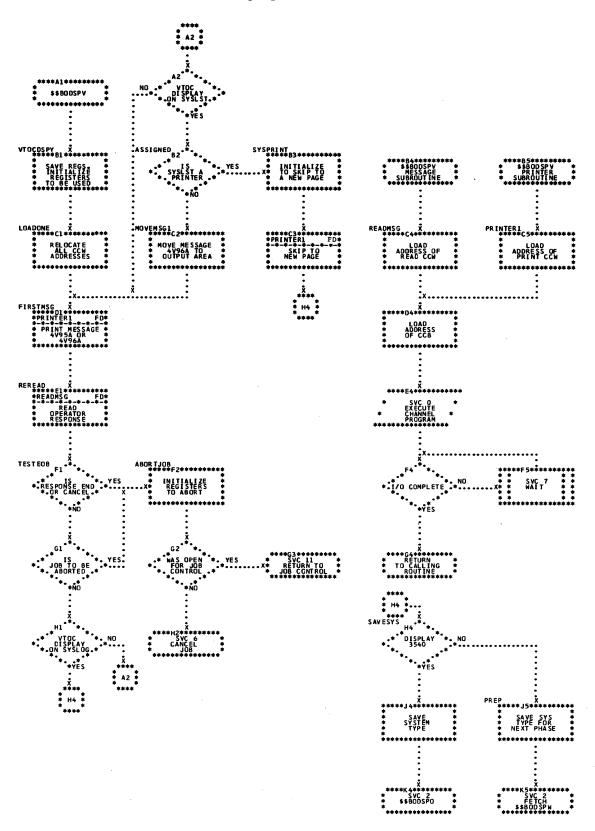


Chart FE. \$\$BODSPW: VTOC Display, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 2)

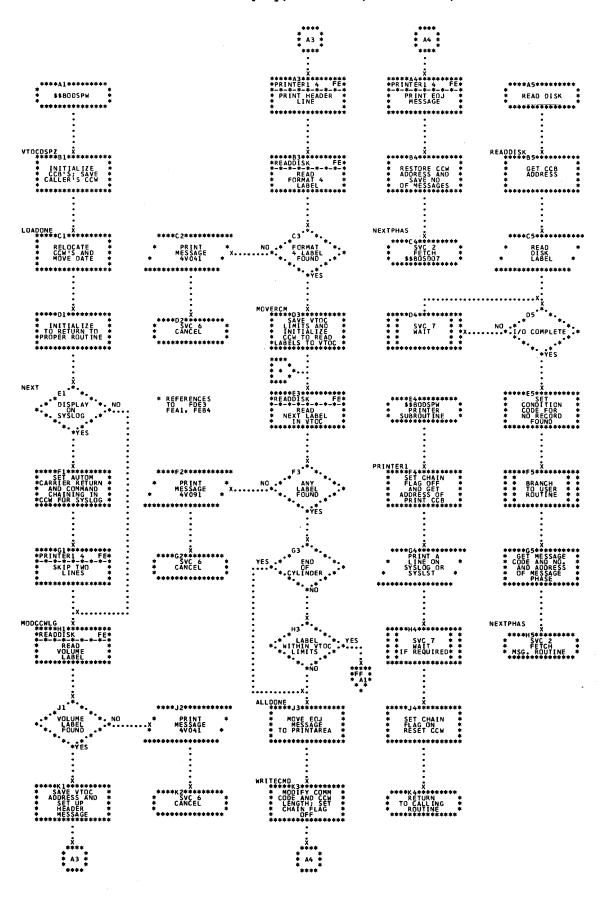


Chart FF. \$\$BODSPW: VTOC Display, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 2)

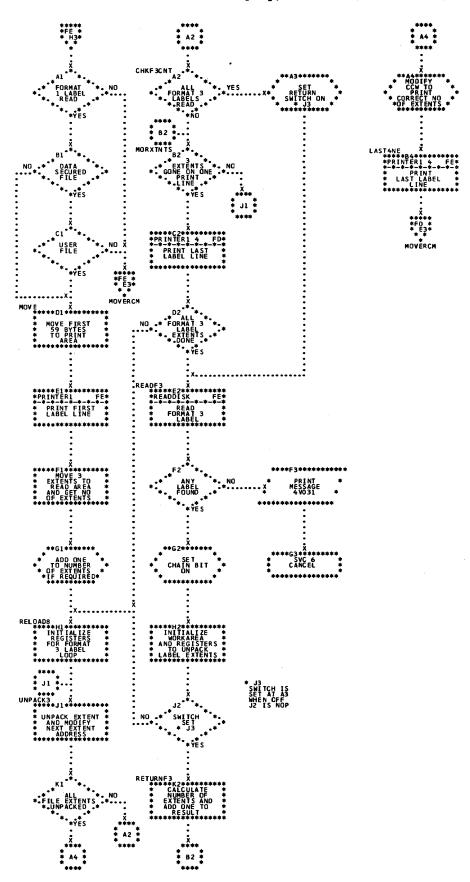


Chart FG. \$\$BOVDMP: VTOC Dump (Part 1 of 2)

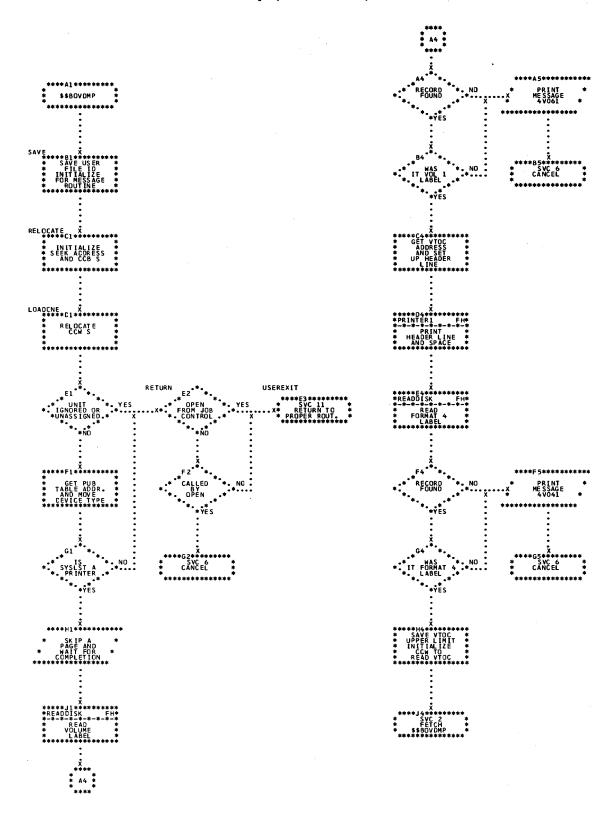


Chart FH. \$\$BOVDMP: VTOC Dump (Part 2 of 2)

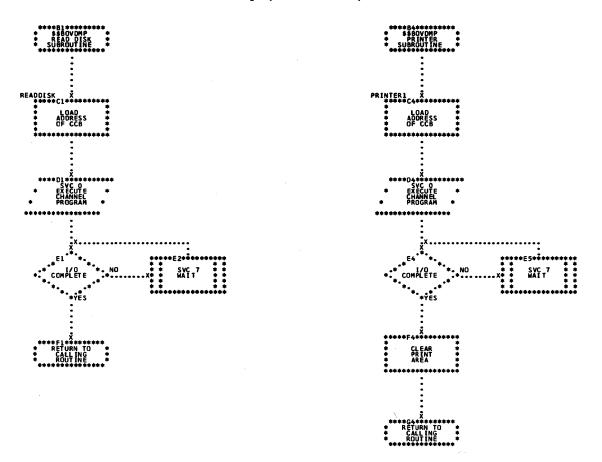


Chart FI. \$\$BOWDMP: List VTOC

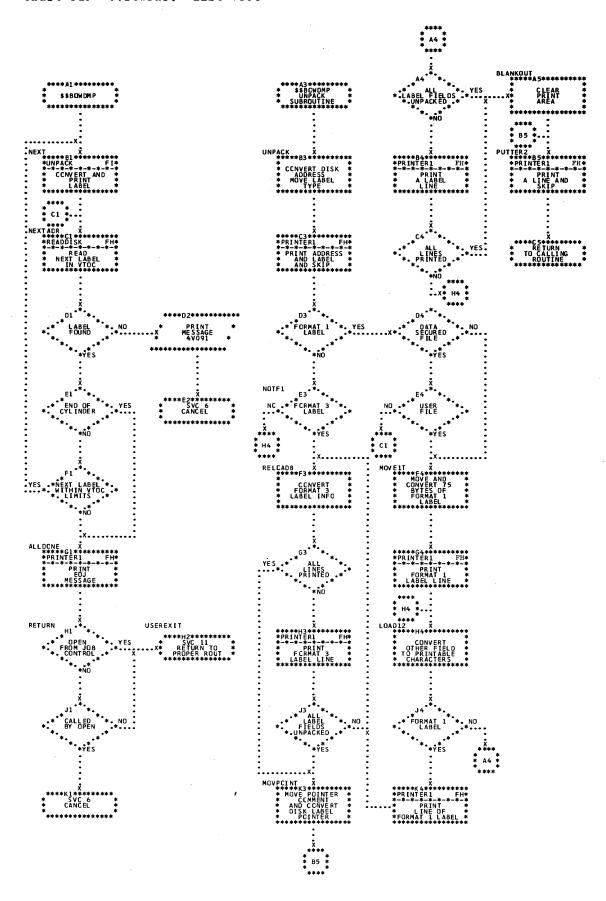


Chart FJ. \$\$BOMSG1: Disk Open Error Message Writer, Phase 1

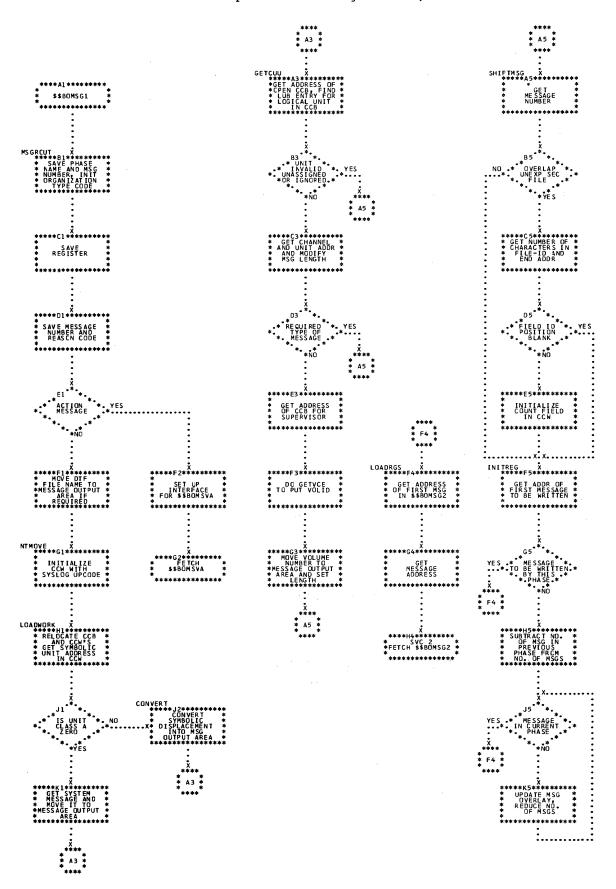


Chart FK. \$\$BOMSG2: Disk Open Error Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 2)

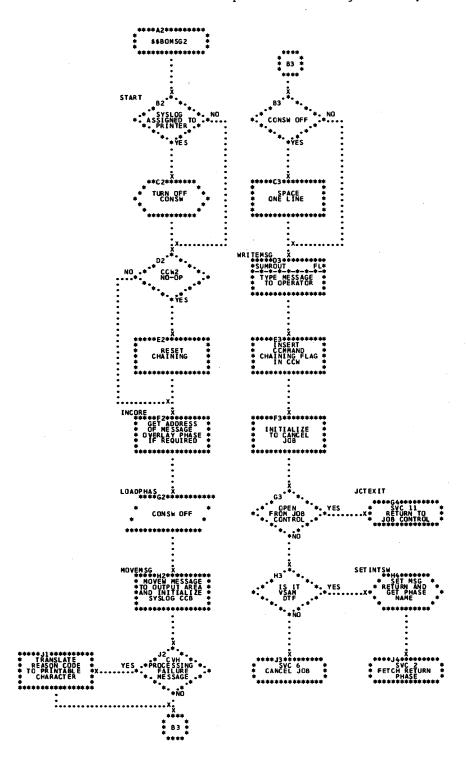


Chart FL. \$\$BOMSG2: Disk Open Error Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 2)

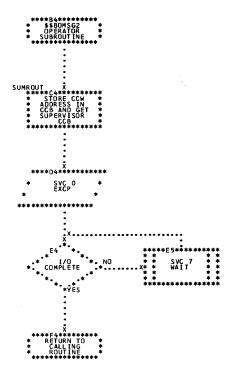


Chart FM. \$\$BODSMW: Data Security Message Writer

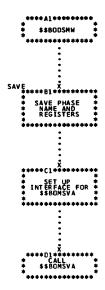


Chart FN. \$\$BOESTV: Error Statistics by Tape Volume (Part 1 of 2)

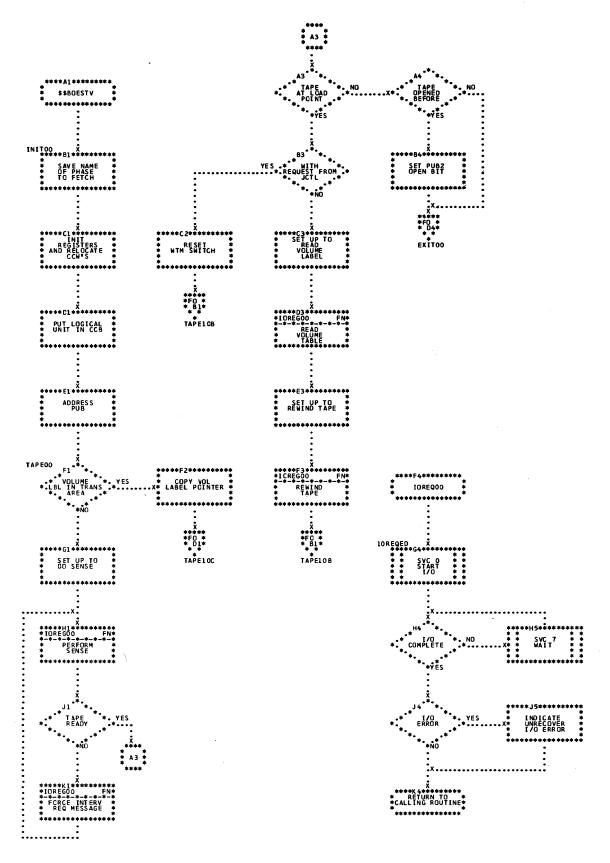


Chart FO. \$\$BOESTV: Error Statistics by Tape Volume (Part 2 of 2)

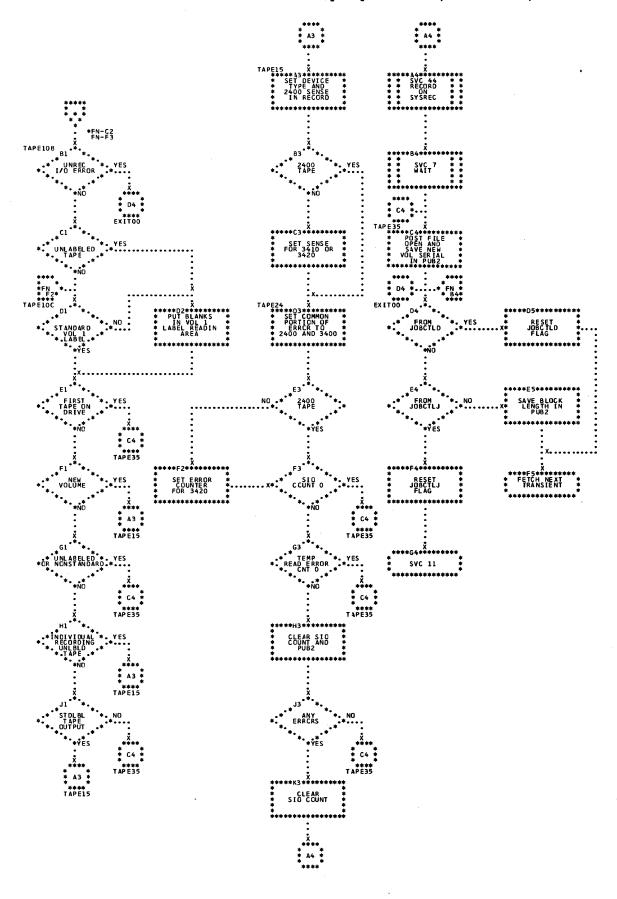


Chart GA. \$\$BODMSG: Diskette Open Message Writer, Phase 1

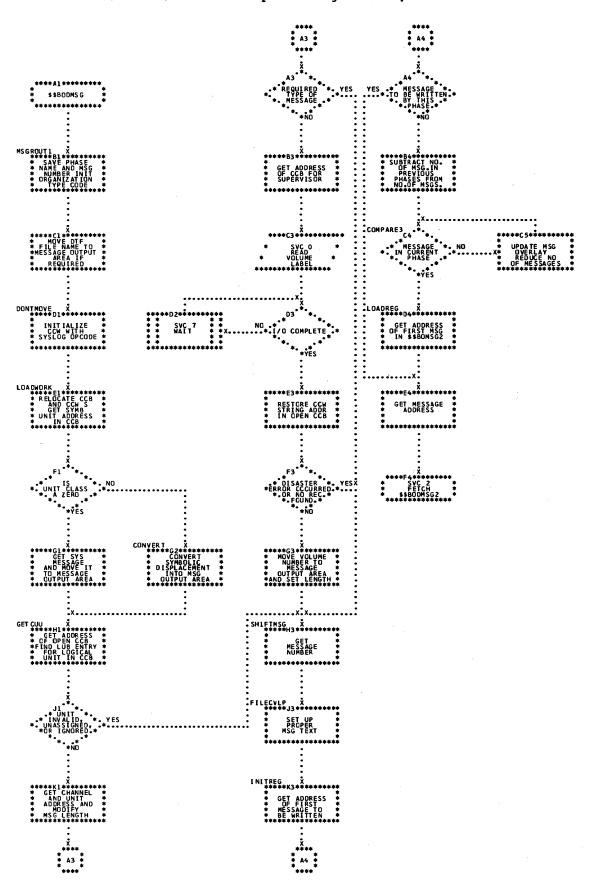


Chart GB. \$\$BODMS2: Diskette Open Error Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 1 of 2)

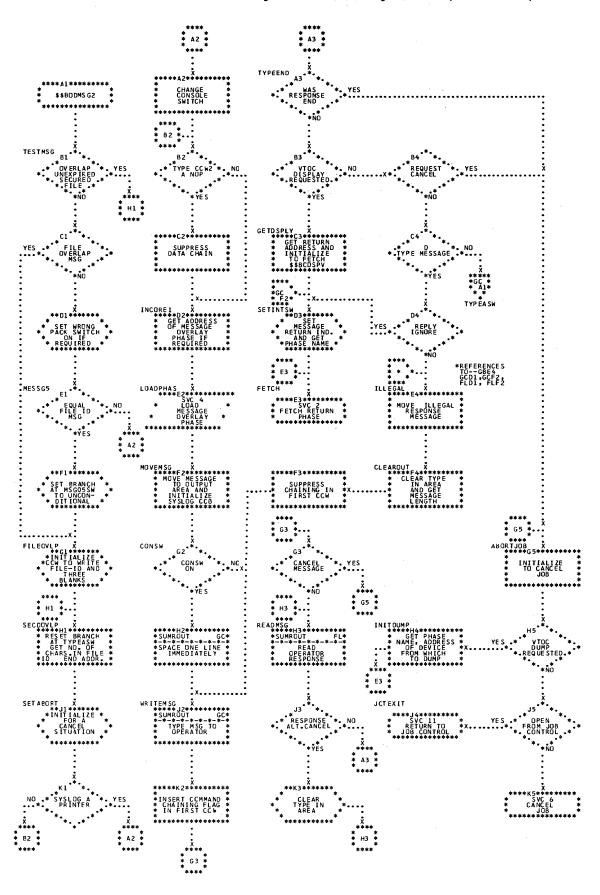


Chart GC. \$\$BODMS2: Diskette Open Error Message Writer, Phase 2 (Part 2 of 2)

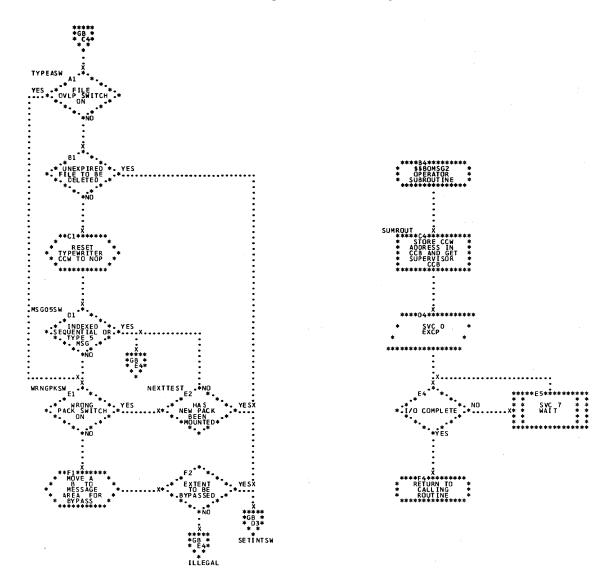


Chart GD. \$\$BODSMO: Diskette Data Security Message Writer

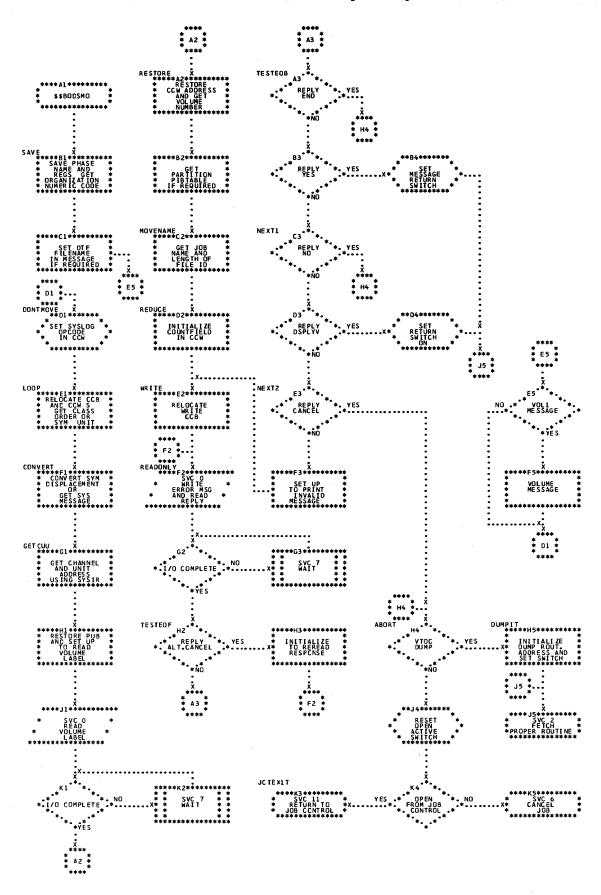


Chart HG. \$\$BOPEN4: 3340 DTF Device Type Update Open (Part 1 of 2)

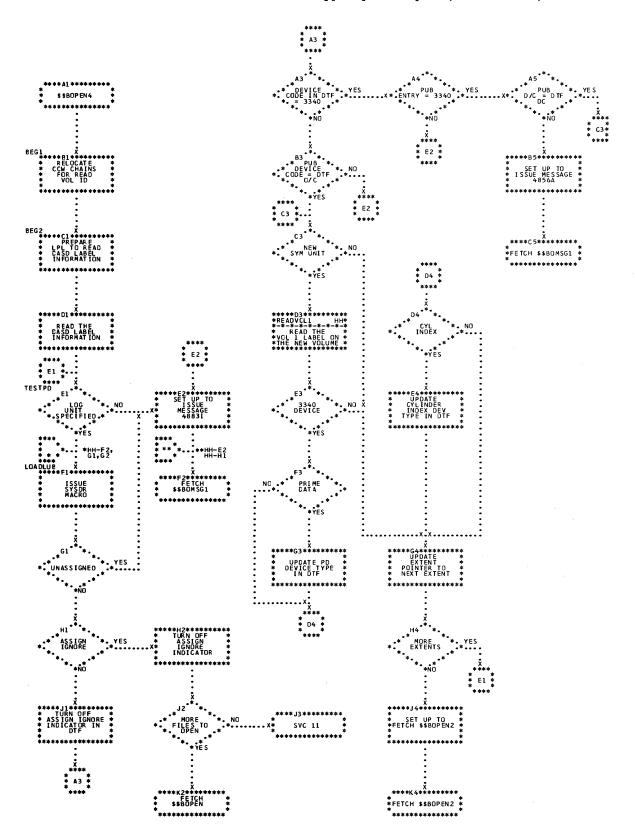


Chart HH. \$\$BOPEN4: 3340 DTF Device Type Update Open (Part 2 of 2)

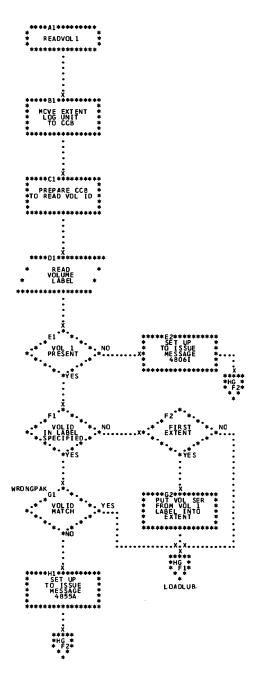


Chart JA. \$\$BODSPO: Diskette VTOC Display

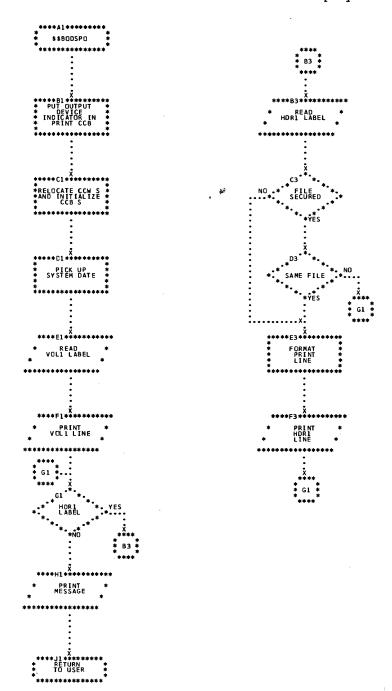


Chart JB. \$\$BOVDMO: Diskette VTOC Dump

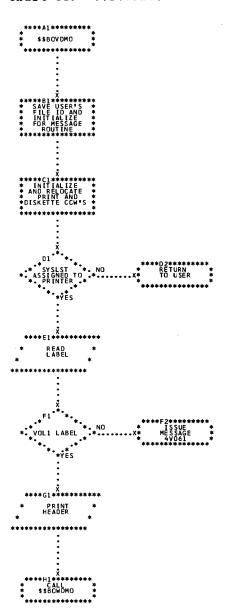
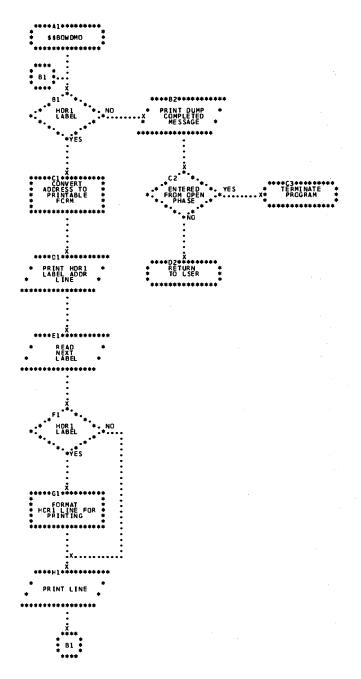


Chart JC. \$\$BOWDMO: Diskette List VTOC



APPENDIX A: LAFFL CROSS-REFFRENCE LIST

ABORT	Gľ	DOIO	ВP
ABORTJOB	FD	DOIT	EE
ABORTJOB	GB	DONTMOV E	FJ
ABOVEFE	ΑI	DONTMOVE	GA
ABSOLUTE	ΑQ	DONTMOVE	GD
ADD	ΑŢ	DOUBCCW	BE
ADDRTR	ΪĀ	DTFTYPE	BM
AGAIN	BG	DUMPIT	GD
	EF		BT
ALLDONE		ENTINT	
ALLDONE	FE	EOJPROC ERRCHKS	BU
ALLDONE	FI		ΑQ
ASFPCH	BE	ERROR	BT
ASSIGNED	FD	EXCP	BP
BEG1	HG	EXIT	AV
BEG2	HG	EXIT	BC
BELOWFE	AI	EXITUSER	CC
BLANKOUT	FI	EXITOO	AΒ
BOPEN1	ΑF	EXITO O	FI2
BYPASS	BD	EXITO 7	AB
CALLNEXT	ΑV	FCHMSG	AΡ
CALLPCHC	BK	FCHMSG	ВK
CALLPHZ2	BF	FEEDCARD	BM
CALLSVA	CD	FEEDOMR	\mathtt{BL}
CCWLOOP	BD	FETCH	ВK
CCWUPDT	BA	FETCH	GB
CDTAPE	BM	FETCH 2	BM
CHKFILE	BL	FILEOVLP	GA
CHKF3CNT	FF	FILEOVLP	GB
CICANCEL	AN	FILETYPE	CA
CKJIB	EE	FINDER	BU
CKUNIT	EF	FIRSTMSG	FD
CKXTNT	AQ	?IXBK	- B N
CK 1052	A E	FLPRING	AJ
CLEAROUT	GE	FREEJIB	EE
CNDTF	BE	F TCHR EC	AI
CNVDAT	AE	FTCH2	AI
CNVDAT	BG	GETCUU	FJ
COBOLBL	CB	GETCUU	GA
COMMON	AQ	GETCUU	GD
COMNEXIT	CB	GETDS PLY	GB
COMPARES	FJ	G E TLA B	ΑQ
COMPARE 3	GA	G ET NEXT	EE
CONSW	GE	GETPUB	ΕE
CONTROL	A V	GETUNIT	EE
CONTWU	EG	GOTOIT	EG
CONVERT	FJ	IGN	ВH
CONVERT	G A	IGN	ВM
CONVERT	GD	IGN1	BH
CPCLOSE	CA	IGN2	BH
CPDEC	BB	IGNTEST	AL
CPDEC1	BE	IGNCHKS	AL
CPDEC 2	BB	IJBRPS40	BQ
CPDEC3	BB	ILLEGAL	GB
CPTEST	BB	INCORE	FK
CPTEST	CE	INCORE	GB
CP 31	ВK	INCORE1	GB
CP32	BM	INCTRL	ΑV
DA	BK	INITCHT	ΑQ
DASDTYPE	AH	INITOUMP	GB
DEVINDT	BC	INITEG	FJ
DIOUT	BC	INTIKEG	GA
DIRECT	BC	INTIREG INITOO	FN
DIRECT1	BC	INITIO	A A
DLABERR	AP	INTT10 INPT3540	
DLABERR			BA
	A Q	INTAPE	AI
DLBLIS	A N	INVALTP	BK

IOREQ00	FO			NEXT1	EG
ISDISK	во			NEXT1	GD
ISNEXT	AT			NEXT2	GD
ISOP	AP			NMFETCH	CB
ISRESTRD	EF			NOALT	EE
JCTEXIT	FΚ			NODUTYPE	AΗ
JCTEXIT	GE		~	NOHOLD	CC
JCTEXIT	GD			NOP	AE
KSET3800	EK			NOPEN	AF
	_				
LABREAD	BI			NORESTR	EF
LAST4NE	FF		2	NOSECUR	AF
LDDTF	ΑF			NOTAPE	AΗ
LDDTF	BG			NOTCON	BE
LDDTF	BM			NOTFOUND	ΑV
LOADONE	FE			NOTFOUND	BF
LOADONE	FC	¥		NOTF1	FI
	-				
LOADONE	FG			NOUTMC	AL
LOADPHAS	FK			NOVALDT	A M
LOADPHAS	GB			NVALTP	AH
LOADREG	G A			NVALTP	A M
LOADRGS	FJ			OCRTEST	BE
					-
LOADWORK	FJ			OPENC NA M	A W
LOADWORK	G A			OPEN3340	AH
LOAD12	FI			OTHER	BM
LOOP	ΑQ			OTHEROWN	EG
LOOP	GĽ			OTPT3540	BA
LTIOREG	AM			OUTAPE	AI
			* * *		
MAGTAPE	AU			OUTPTFL	CA
MAGTAPEX	A U		1 × 1	OWNERCK	EF
MAGTAPE1	AU			PAST3800	ВK
MAGTAPE2	AU			PHTEST	СВ
MAGTAPE3	AU			PRELIOCS	CA
MAGTAPE4	AU			PREP	FD
MESSG5	GB			PRINT	BE
MICRCHCK	AΤ			PRINTER1	FE
MODCCWLG	FF			PRINTER 1	FD
MODEXIT	A V			PRINTER1	FH
MODEXIT	BC			PRINTM	BF
MODEXIT	BF			PRT/PCH	BL
MODLOOP				•	
	BD		* 4	PTAPE	BA
MODLOOP1	BD			PTAPE 1	BA
MODLOOP2	BD			PTAPE 2	BA
MODRESP	GB			PTAPE3	BA
MORE	AF			PTAPE 4	BA
MORE	BM			PTAPRDR	BA
MORE	EG			PUNCH	BL
MORXINIS	FF			PUNCHM	BE
MOVE	FF			PUNCHM	BF
MOVEMSG	FK			PUTTER2	FI
MOVEMSG	GB			RDINIT	AΕ
MOVEMSG1	FD			READ	BL
MOVENAME	GD	•		READDISK	FE
MOVERCM	FF			READDISK	FH
MOVE1T	FI			READF 3	FF
MOVLOLIM	CA			READM	BF
MOVPOINT	FΙ			R EADM SG	FD
MSGROUT	FJ			READMSG	GB
MSGROUT1	G A			READONLY	GD
MSG05SW	GC				
				R EDUC E	GD
MUSYMUN	ΑQ			REENT RY	AF
NCLOS	BG			REENTRY	BG
NCLOS	BM			REENT RY	BM
NEXT	AS			REGSVE	AΕ
NEXT	BA			RELADR	BC
	BE				
NEXT				RELATIVE	AQ
NEXT	FE			RELOAD8	FF
NEXT	FI			RELOAD8	FI
NEXTADR	FΙ			RELOC	BG
NEXTJIB	EF			RELOC	во
NEXTONE	EF			RELOCATE	FG
NEXTPHAS	FE			REREAD	FD
NEXTTEST	GC			RESET 9	CA

RESTORE	GD			TAPE35	FO
RESTORE	BS			TAPE10B	FO
RETRVE	AΤ			TAPE1 0C	FO
RETURN	AF		*	TEST	BK
RETURN	AV		, i	TESTA SC	AJ
RETURN	BC			TESTEOB	FD
RETURN	BF			TESTEOB	GD
RETURN	FG			TESTEOF	GD
RETURN	FI			TESTIR	AJ
RETURNF3	FF			TESTMSG	GB
RPSEXIT	CE			TESTPD	HG
RPSTST	CB	w ,		TESTPTR	FA
SAVE	FG			TESTFIR	AG
SAVE	FM			TEST2	BH
SAVE	GD		0	THERE	AF
SAVESYS	FD			TLBL	AQ
SDTEST	CB			TRKLOOP	CC
SECDOVLP	GB			TRUNC	AV
SENSE	AJ		ú	T STEN TR Y	AF
SEQDISK	ΑV			TSTENTRY	BG
SEQLAB	AJ		``	TYPEA SW	GC
SEQWRITE	ΑV			TYPEEND	GB
SETABORT	GP			UNITRCD	BL
SETINTSW	FK			UNITREC	BE
SETINTSW	GB		,	UNITREC 1	BE
SFREG	AM			UNLTAPE	AI
SHIFTMSG	FJ		`.	UNPACK	FI
SH1FTMSG	GA			UNPACK3	FF
SKIP12	AW			UPDATE	EE
SKIP16	AW		,	UPTOA SF	BE
SKIP18	AW			USEREXIT	FG
START	AS			USEREXIT	FI
START	BA			VALDT	AL
START	FK			VALIDATE	BD
STARTFRE	CC			V LDTL M	BM
SUMROUT	FI			VTFILE	BH
SUMROUT	GC			VTOCDSPY	FD
SVLABAD	AF			V TOCDSP1	
SYREAD	BI				FE
				WKTAPE	AI
SYSPRINT	FC			WORKFILE	CA
TAPE	AP			WRITE	GD
TAPE	BK			WRITECMD	FE
TAPEFILE	BK			WRITEMSG	FK
TAPETYPE	AG			WRITE MSG	GB
TAPEOO	AA			WRNGPKSW	GC
TAPE00	FN			WRONGPAK	HH
TAPE 15	FO			YESCHAIN	EG
TAPE20	FC				
		,			

The messages in this list are arranged in sequence by message number. The message numbers of all logical IOCS messages start with the digit 4. The second digit of the message number indicates the type of file or routine issuing the message. The indicators are:

- 0 = Punch file
- 1 = Magnetic tape file
- 2 = ISAM
- 3 = Sequential DASD, diskette open input
- 4 = Sequential DASD, diskette open output 5 = Sequential DASD, diskette close

- 6 = DAM input 7 = DAM output
- 8 = Common open/close routines
- 9 = Sequential DASD work file
- V = VTOC display routines

The alphabetic character after the message number is the action indicator. These indicators are:

Action <u>Indicator</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
A - Action	The operator must perform a specific manual action before the program can continue. For example, mount a tape or ready an I/O device.
D - Decision	The operator must make a choice of alternative courses of action.
I - Information	The message does not require immediate operator action. For example: This type of message can indicate successful completion of a problem program.

The number(s) in the volume column refers to the documentation of the message issuing routine(s) in the following VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference manuals:

- LIOCS Volume 1: General Information and Imperative Macros,
- LICCS Volume 2: SAM.
- LICCS Volume 3: DAM and ISAM,
- LIOCS Volume 4: SAM for DASD

For further detailed information on these messages, see <u>VSE/Advanced</u> Functions Messages.

Message Number		 Chart	 Volume	Message
	\$\$BOMT03 \$\$BCCPT3	ED RJ	2 2	NO VOL1 LBL FOUND TLBL=xxxxxx filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT01 \$\$BCCPT4	EA RL	2	NO VOL1 LBL FOUND filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT01 \$\$BOMT03 \$\$BOCPT3 \$\$BOCPT4	EA ED RH RL	2 1 2 1 2	VOL SERIAL NO. ERROR TLBL=xxxxxx filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT01 \$\$BOCPT4	EA RM	2	NO HDR1 LBL FOUND filename SYSxxx=cuu
4114A	\$\$BOMT01 \$\$BOCPT4	EB RL	2	FILE SEQ NO. ERROR filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT01 \$\$BCCPT4	EA RL	2	FILE SER. NO. ERROR TLBL=xxxxxxx filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT01 \$\$BOCPT4	FA RL	2	VOLUME SEQ. NO. ERROR filename SYSxxx=cuu
4117D	\$\$BOMT02 \$\$BOMT05	EC EG	2	NO TM FOUND ON READBK filename SYSxxx=cuu
4118D 4118I	\$\$BOMT02	EC	2	FILE ID ERROR, READBK filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT03 \$\$BOMT06 \$\$BOCPT3	EE EH RH	2 1 2 1 2	FILE UNEXPIRED filename SYSxxx=cuu
4120I	\$\$BOMT03	EE	2	TAPE POSITIONED WRONG filename SYSXXX=cuu
4121A	\$\$BCMT07	FH	1 2	NO ALTERN DRIVE ASSGN SYSXXX=cuu
4122I	\$\$BCMT07	FH	2	EOV ENCOUNTERED SYSxxx=cuu
4123D 4123I	\$\$BOMT02	EC	2 2	WRONG POSITN, READBK filename SYSxxx=cuu
4124I	\$\$BOMT04	EF	2	TOO MANY UHL'S filename SYSxxx=cuu
4125D 4125I	\$\$BOMT05	EG	2 	VOL1 LBL FOUND filename SYSxxx=cuu
41261	\$\$BCMT02	FB	2	EOV ENCOUNTERED filename SYSxxx=cuu
4127A	\$\$BCMT05	FE	2	EOV WHILE WRITING EOF
4130A	\$\$BCMT01	FA	2	EOF OR EOV INQUIRY filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BCMT01 \$\$BCMT03	FA FC	•	BLOCK COUNT ERROR filename SYSxxx=cuu DTF=xxxxxx LBL=xxxxxx
4132D	\$\$ BOMT 0 1 \$\$ BOCPT 4	EA RL	1 2 1 2	 ERROR IN FILE ID filename SYSxxx=cuu
	 \$\$BOMT01 \$\$BOCPT4	EB RL	2 2 2	 ERROR IN HDR LBL filename SYSxxx=cuu

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 1 of 8)

Message Number		 Chart	 Volume	 Message
4 14 0A	\$\$BCMT02	FB	2	NO ALTERN DRIVE ASSGN filename SYSxxx=cuu
4151I	\$\$BOMT01	I EA	2	
	\$\$BOMT04	EF (2	
4170A		+	2	FILE PROTECTED TAPE filename SYSxxx=cuu
4170A	\$\$BJCOPT 	EK		
4171A	\$\$BJCOP1	EL	2	UNEXPIRED FILE SYSxxx=cuu
4172A	\$\$BJCOP1	EL	2	INVALID LABEL SET SYSXXX=cuu
	\$\$BOMT01	EA	2	INVALID LOGICAL UNIT filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOMT02	EC	2	1
. 1	\$\$BOMT03	ED	2	lacksquare
	\$\$BOMT06	EH (2	1
	\$\$BJCOPT	EK	2	
,	\$\$BCMT01	FA	2	
i	\$\$BCMT05	FE	2	
	\$\$BCMT07	FH	2	
4 18 4 D	 \$\$BOCPT2	RE	2	INEED FILE PROTECT RNG filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOCPT2	RF	2	I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I
	\$\$BOCPT3	RJ	2	l 1
	## BUCP13	Ku		
4185I	\$\$BOMRCE	I AC	2	INVALID FORMAT RECORD
	\$\$BOMRCE	AD	2	
4000I	CDMOD	AL	2	 RETRY
	\$\$BCLOSP	SC	2	ABIAI
		•		
	\$\$BCLOSP	SD	2	
	\$\$BERRTN 	PG	2	
4n00I	IJJGSD VH	3-93	4	NO LABEL SPACE IN VTOC
4400I	\$\$BODIO3	WG	2	
4 n 0 1 I	IJJGSDVH	3-93	4	NO FORMAT 1 LABEL or NO RECORD FOUND

4201I	\$\$BOIS02	LC	3	
	\$\$BOISOA	NA	3	
4301I	\$\$BOSIO5		2	, !
		i1		
4202I	\$\$BCISCA	NA	3	NO RECORD FOUND
4n03I	IJJGDAI1	3-66	4	INO FORMAT 3 LABEL FOUND
	IJJGDAI2	3-67		,
	IJJGSDI3	3-42		
	IJJGSDI4	3-43		
	IJJGSDW3	3-48		
		 3.40 		!
4n04I	IJJGSDVH	3-93	4	NO FORMAT 4 LBL IN VTOC
4204I	\$\$ BOIS 0 2	LC	3	NO FORMAT 4 LBL IN VTOC or NO RECORD FOUND
4n05I	\$\$BOPEN2	AQ	1	UNRECOVERABLE I/O ERROR
	\$\$BOPLBL	AK	1	·
	\$\$BCLLBL	BJ	i	
	\$\$BOSDW1	MB	2	1
	\$\$BCCPT1	SB I	2	I I
	IJJGDARL	1 3-971	4	

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 2 of 8)

Message Number		 Chart	 Volume	 Message
4n06I	IJJGSDGC	3-97	4	NO STANDARD VOL 1 LABEL OF NO RECORD FOUND
	\$\$BOISO2 \$\$BCISOA	LC NA	3	•,
43061	\$\$BODIO1	V D	2	
4506I	\$\$BODIC4	WT	2	
48061	\$\$BOPEN4	НН	1	
4n07I	IJJGSDRL	3-96	4	NO RECORD FOUND
43071	\$\$B35400	VC	2	
4407I	\$\$B3540I	WC	2	
	\$\$BOKUL1 \$\$BIKUL1 \$\$BOULI1 \$\$BOULO1	3-11 3-5 3-5.1 3-11.1	i ! I	NO UTLO FILE MARK FOUND OF NO RECORD FOUND
4608D	\$\$BODACL	CQ	3	
4n20I	IJJGSDSF	3-23	4	PROC. DATA NOT ACCESSIBLE
4n31D	IJJGSDI2	3-41	4	VOLUME SEQUENCE ERROR
43321	\$\$BODIO5	I VH	2	
4n33A	IJJGDA03 IJJGSDC4	3-62 3-30	4	EQUAL FILE IN VTOC
4433A	\$\$BODIC2	WD	2	
4n34I	IJJGSD06 IJJGSDW3	3-32 3-48	4 1	CURRENT FILE LBL DELETED
4n 36I	IJJGSDW3	3-48	4	NO MORE AVAIL/MATCH EXTENT
4337I	\$\$B3540I \$\$BODIC6	VA VM	2	CHAINING TO SYSTEM UNIT
	\$\$B35400 \$\$BODIC7		2	
	\$\$BIKUL1 \$\$BOULI1	•	4	USER HDR LBL IS NOT STD
4639D	\$\$BODACL	CΩ	3	USER TRL LBL IS NOT STD
	IJJGSDC4 IJJGDAO3			EXTENT OVERLAY ON ANOTHER
4240I	\$\$BOIS02	LC	3	EXTENT OVERLAPS ANOTHER
	IJJGDAC3	•	4 	EXTENT OVERLAP ON VTOC
4241I	\$\$BOIS02	IC	3	1
4 n 4 2 A	IJJGSDI4	3-43	1 4	NO MATCHING EXTENT
	\$\$BORTV1	NF	3	INV EXTENT HI/LO LIMITS

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 3 of 8)

Message Number		Chart	 Volume	 Message
4n44A	IJJGDAC3 IJJGSDO4	3-62 3-30		OVERLAP ON UNEXPIRED FILE
	IJJGDACX IJJGSDSF IJJGSDXT	3-58 3-23 3-34	ĺ	TOO MANY EXTENTS
42451	\$\$BOIS06	LI	3	
4445I	\$\$BODI08	MQ	2	
4246I	\$\$ BOIS 07	AM	3	DISCONT INDEX EXTENTS
4n47A	IJJGSDW1	3-46	4	EXTENTS NOT ON SAME UNIT
4n48I	IJJGSDSF	3-23	4	SYSIN/SYSOUT UNSUPPORTED
43481	\$\$B35400	UE	2	
4249I	\$\$ BOIS 0 5	LG	3	DATA TRACK LIMIT INVALID
4 n 5 0 A	IJJGSDXT	3-34	4	NO MORE AVAILABLE EXTENTS
4450A	\$\$BODIC8	WP	2	
4n51I	IJJGDACX	3-58	4	SYSUNITS NOT IN SEQUENCE
4252I	\$\$ BOIS05	LE	3	DISCONT TYPE 1 EXTENTS
4n54I	IJJGDART	3-68	4	DSKXTN ENTRY TABLE FULL
	\$\$BOIS05 \$\$BORTV2	LG NG	3	
4n55A	IJJGDAVC IJJGSDLP	3-59	•	WRONG PACK, MOUNT nnnnn
4355A	\$\$BOSDI1	LF	2	
4855A	\$\$BOPEN4	НН	1	
4856A	\$\$BOPEN4	HG	1	WRONG MODULE SIZE
	IJJGDA01 IJJGSDRL	3-60 3-95		NO EXTENT FOR OUTPUT FILE
43581	\$\$B35400	UF	2	
	IJJGSDO2 IJJGSDI4 IJJGDACX IJJGSDC5 IJJGSDLP	3-29 3-43 3-58 3-31 3-98	 	INVALID EXTENT -
4 n 5 9 I	IJJGSDRL	3-95	1 4	
	\$\$BODIC5 \$\$BODIO6	A A K	2	
4459I	\$\$BODIO3	WG	2	
4859I	\$\$BOPEN2	AQ	1 1	1

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 4 of 8)

Message Number		 Chart	Volume	Message
4n60I	 IJJGSDC1	3-28	4	NO EXTENTS, ALL BYPASSED
	IJJGSDI1	3-39		
	•	3-23		
	IJJGSDSF	•		
	IJJGSDW1	3-46		
	IJJGDA01	3-60		·
	IJJGDAC2	3-61		
	IJJGDAO4	3-63	 	
4360I	\$\$B35401	VB	2	
4 n 6 1 I	IJJGSDRL	3-95		INVALID DLBL FUNCTION
	IJJGDARL	3 - 57	 	
426 1 I	, \$\$BOIS01	LA	3	
	\$\$BORTV1	ND	i	
	ļ	 		
4361I	\$\$B35400 	UF	2	
4861I	\$\$BOPEN2	AP	1	
4262I	\$\$BOIS05	l LG	3	NO PRIME DATA EXTENT
	\$\$BORTV1	I ND		NO PRIME DATA EXIENT
42631	\$\$BOIS07	MB	1 3	LOAD FILE NOT CLOSED
				
4364I	\$\$BODIC5	! VF	2	INVALID HDR1 LABEL
	\$\$BODIO6	V M		
	 	 		44 MD147 MARD IDI DUMBUM
	IJJGSDI4	1 3-43	•	1 TRACK USER LBL EXTENT
	IJJGSD05	3-31		
	IJJGDA02	3-61	!	
42661	\$\$BOIS05	LF	3 (
4n67I	IJJGSD04	3-30	4	CVH PROCESSING FAILURE
	IJJGSDVH	3-93		
	IJJGVD00	3-77	1	
	IJJGVD10	3-85	•	
	IJJGDAC3	3-62		
4n68A	 IJJGSDI4	3-43	 4	USER LBLS EXHAUST FIRST EXTENT
	IJJGSDC5	3-31		
4n68D	IJJGDAC2	3-61	 4	
42691	 \$\$BOIS07	i MC		FILE IS OPEN FOR ADD
4270I	\$\$BORTV2	NG		
	 	 		
	\$\$BOIS01 	LA 		EXTENT INFO NEEDED
4272I	\$\$BOIS08 	MD	3 	MOD AND DTF INCOMPATIBLE

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 5 of 8)

Message Number		 Chart	 Volume	 Message
	IJJGSDBS IJJGSDW1	3-37 3-46		BLKSIZE OPEN FAILURE
	IJJGSDBS IJJGSDI2	3-37 3-41		BLKSIZE NOT MULT OF RECSIZE
4n76D	IJJGSDLP IJJGDAVC	3-98 3-59		VOL SER NOT XXXXXX
4n77A	IJJGSDXT	3-34	4	EXTENT ENTRY ERROR - RETRY
,	\$\$BCFLPT \$\$BOPLBL \$\$BCLLBL \$\$BOPEN2	FA AK BJ AQ	1	GETVIS FAILED
	\$\$BCEOV1 \$\$BCCPT1	EM SB	2	
 	\$\$BOSVLT \$\$BOSFBL IJJGMFEA IJJGSDO4 IJJGSDVH IJJGSDUL	3-4 3-3 3-18 3-30 3-93 3-100		
 - - -	•	3-57 3-67 3-77 3-85 3-102 3-21 3-52		
4n80I	\$\$BOSFEL	3-3	4	INVALID FILE TYPE
	\$\$BOPEN1 \$\$BCLOS2	AH BK	1	
	\$\$BCEOV1	EM	2	
	IJJGSDRL IJJGSDMO IJJGSDSF IJJGDARL	3-95 3-22 3-23 3-57		NO LABEL INFORMATION
	CLOSE \$\$BCLLEL \$\$BOPEN2 \$\$BOPLEL	BP BJ AN AK	1	
	\$\$BCCPT1 \$\$BCFOV1 \$\$B35400	SA EM UF	2	
4282I	\$\$BOIS07	MA	3	ISAM NULL FILE

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 6 of 8)

Message Number		 Chart	Volume	 Message
4n83I	IJJGSDGC	3-97		INVALID LOGICAL UNIT
	IJJGSDNV	1 3-991		
	IJJGSDRL	1 3-951		
	IJJGDACX	3-58 		
4383I	\$\$B3540I	VC i	2	
4483I	\$\$B35400	WC	2	
4883I	\$\$BOPEN4	HG	1	
I	\$\$BOCP01	QA	2] 1
	\$\$BOCP02	QB I		i
	\$\$BOCP11	Į QE		
	\$\$BOCP12	QF	1	1
	\$\$BOUR 01	AB (
4884D	\$\$BOPEN1	AJ	1	NEED FILE PROTECT RNG filename SYSxxx=cuu
	\$\$BOCP02	QB	2	
	\$\$BOCP11	QE I	-	
	\$\$BOCP12	QF		
4885I	\$\$BOPENC	AW	1	SYSXXX AND SYSYYY ARE ASSIGNED TO THE SAME PHYSICAL UNIT
4886D	\$\$BOPEN1	 AJ	1 1	†
4887I	\$\$BERRIN	PG	2	SYS FILE EXTENT EXCEEDED
48881	\$\$BERRTN	PG	 2	EOF ON SYSTEM FILE
4n891	IJJGSDSF	3-23	4	WORKFILE NOT SUPPORTED FOR SYSFIL
4n90I	IJJGSDVH	 3-93	 4	INO JIBS AVAILABLE
•	IJJGVD00	3-77	1	
,	IJJGSDFP	•	•	
4890I	\$\$BCFLFT	FB	1 1	
4n93I	IJJGSDRL	3-96	1 4	UNRECOVERABLE I/O ERROR
4n94I	 IJJGSDCI	1 3-94	 4	
411341	IJJGMIOI			
4n95I	IJJGSDRL	1 3-96	 4	(PHASENAME) NOT IN SVA
	\$\$BOSFEL			1
	IJJGMLLM			İ
 	IJJGDAMX	3-52	!	<u> </u>
4n96I	IJJGSDSF	3-23	4	IMPROPER DTFSD SYSFIL OPEN
•	IJJGDAC3	3-62	4	OVLAP EXPIRED SECRD FILE
4n98I	IJJGSDC4	3-30	1 4	OVLAP UNEXPRD SECRD FILE
ř	IJJGDA03	3-62	!	
4 n 9 9 D	IJJGSDI2	3-41		DATA SECURED FILE ACCESSED

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 7 of 8)

Message Number		 Chart	 Volume	 Message
4 MR 1I	MRMOD	BB	2	EXTERNAL INTERRUPT I/O ERROR filename SYSxxx
4MR2I	MRMOD	ВВ	2	SCU NOT OPERATIONAL filename SYSxxx
4P01I	\$\$BERPIP	PH	2	DATA CHECK SYSXXX=cuu
4P02D	\$\$BERPTP	PH	2	DATA CHECK SYSxxx=cuu
4 V O 3 I	\$\$BODSPW	FF	1 1	NO RECORD FOUND filename SYSxxx
4V04I	\$\$BODSPW \$\$BOVDMP	FF FG		NO RECORD FOUND filename SYSxxx, or NO FORMAT 4 LBL IN VTOC filename SYSxxx
4 V 06I	\$\$BOVDMO \$\$BOVDMP	JB FG	1 1	NO STANDARD VOLUME LABEL filename SYSxxx
4 V 09I	\$\$BODSPW \$\$BOWDMP	FE FI	1 1	NO RECORD FOUND filename SYSxxx
4 V 67I	IJJGVD00	3-83	•	CVH PROCESSING FAILURE
4 V 90I	IJJGVD10	3-85	4	NO JIBS EXIST
4 V 9 5 A	\$\$BCDSFV IJJGVD10	FD 3-85	•	SYSLOG OR SYSLST
	\$\$BODSPV OJJGVD10	FD 3-85		SYSLST NOT A PRINTER

Figure 17. Master Error Message List (Part 8 of 8)

Note: A- and D- type messages are not issued by the B-transient message writer. The respective message writers call \$\$BOMSVA which in turn transfers control to the SVA message writers in order to issue the message from the SVA.

APPENDIX C: ASCII CONVERSION TABLES

ASCII to EBCDIC Correspondence (0/0 to 3/15)

	EBCDIC						ASCII		
Comments		Bi Pati	Row	Col		Bi	Row	Col	Character
	eiii	1011	n Hex)		Pattern		i		
	0000	0000	0	0	0000	0000	0	0	NUL
	0001	0000	1	0	0001	0000	1	0	SOH
	0010 0011	0000	3	0	0010	0000 00 00	3	0	STX ETX
	0111	0011	7	3	0100	0000	4	1 0	EOT
	1101	0010	Ó	2	0101	0000	5	1 0	ENQ
	1110	0010	E	2	0110	0000	6	0	ACK
	1111	0010	F	2	0111	0000	7	0	BEL
	0110	0001	6	1	1000	0000	8	0	BS
	0101	0000	5	0 1	1001	0000	9	0	HT
	0101	0010 0000	5 B	2 <u>1</u>	1010 1011	0000	10	0	LF
 	1100	0000	- }	- 6 1	1100	0000	12	0	VT FF
	1101	0000	D	0 1	1101	0000	13	0	CR
 	1110	0000	E	0 1	1110	0000	14	Ö	so
I	1111	0000	F	0	1111	0000	15	Ö	SI ·
	0000	0001	0	1	0000	0001	0	1	DLE
	0001	0001	1	1	0001	0001	1		DC1
 	0010	0001	2	<u> </u> i	0010	0001	2	1	DC2
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	0011	0001	3	1	0011	0001	3	 	DC3
 	1100	0011	<u> </u>	3	0100	0001	4	1 1	DC4
	0010	0011 0011	D 2	3 1	0101 0110	0001 0001	5	1	NAK
 	0110	0010	6	3	0111	0001	7	 	SYN ETB
	1000	0001	8	1	1000	0001	 '8 	 	CAN
<u> </u>	1001	0001	9	1	1001	0001	1 9	ti	EM
	1111	0011	F	3	1010	0001	10	ī	SUB
	0111	0010	7	2	1011	0001	11	1	ESC
	1100	0001	С	1	1100	0001	12	1	FS
	1101	0001	D	1	1101	0001	13	1	GS
	1110	0001	E	1	1110	0001	14	 	RS
	1111	0001 0100	F 0	4	0000	0001	15 0	1 2	US SP
Logical OR	1111	0100	F	4	0001	0010	! ĭ	2	<u> </u>
Logical OK	1111	0111	F	7 1	0010	0010	1 2	2	<u>'</u>
	1011	0111	В	7	0011	0010	3	2	#
	1011	0101	В	5	0100	0010	4	2	\$
	1100	0110	С	6	0101	0010	5	2	%
	0000	0101	0	5	0110	0010	6	2	&
	1101	0111	D	7	0111	0010	7	2	
	1101	0100 0101	D	5	1000	0010 0010	8 9	2 2	\
†	1100	0101	c	5	1010	0010	10	2	*
1	1110	0100	E	4	1011	0010	111	2	+
	1011	0110	В	6	1100	0010	12	2	
Hyphen, Min	0000	0110	0	6	1101	0010	13	2	
	1011	0100	В	4	1110	0010	14	2	••
	0001	0110	1	6	1111	0010	15	2	/
 	0000	1111	0	F I	0000	0011	0	3	0
 	0001 0010	1111	1 2	F I	0001 0010	0011	1 2	3	2
 	0010	1111	3	F	0011	0011	3	3	3
	0100	1111	4	F 1	0100	0011	4	3	4
	0101	iiii	5	F	0101	0011	5	3	5
	0110	1111	6	F	0110	0011	6	3	6
	0111	1111	7	F	0111	0011	7	3	7
	1000	1111	8	F	1000	0011	8	3	8
 	1001	1111	9	F	1001	0011	9	3	9
 	1010	0111	A .	7	1010	0011	10	3	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1	1110	0101 0100	E C	5	1011	0011	11	3	
 	1110	0111	E	7	1101	0011	13	3	
		0110	E	6	1110	0011	14	3	>
	1110	0110							

Figure 18. ASCII to EBCDIC Conversion (Part 1 of 2)

ASCII to EBCDIC Correspondence (4/0 to 7/15)

	ASCII					EBCDIC				
Character	Col	Row		it	Col	Row		Sit	Comments	
Citaración	601	l KOW	Pattern		(in	Hex)	Pattern		Comments	
(å)	4	0	0100	0000	7	C	0111	1100		
A	4	1	0100	0001	С	1	1100	0001		
В	4	2	0100	0010	С	2	1100	0010		
С	4	3	0100	0011	C	3	1100	0011	<u> </u>	
D	4	4	0100	0100	C	1 4	1100	0100	.	
E F	4 4	5	0100	0101	C	6	1100 1100	0101		
- F G	4 4	6	0100	0110	c	1 7	1100	0110		
Н	4	8	0100	1000	c	8	1100	1000	<u> </u>	
i	4	9	0100	1001	C	9	1100	1 1001		
J	4	10	0100	1010	D	! 1	1101	0001		
K	4	11	0100	1011	D	2	1101	0010		
L	4	12	0100	1100	D	3	1101	0011		
М	4	13	0100	1101	D	1 4	1101	0100		
<u>N</u>	4	14	0100	1110	D	5	1101	0101		
<u> </u>	4 -	15	0100	1111	D	6	1101	0110	 	
P	5 -	1 0	0101	0000	D	7	1101	0111	 	
Q R	5	1 2	0101 0101	0001	D D	8	1101 1101	1000		
KS	5	3	0101	0010	E	2	1110	0010		
Ť	5	4	0101	0100	E	1 3	1110	0011	+	
Ü	5	5	0101	0101	Ē	4	1110	I 0100	<u> </u>	
V	5	6	0101	0110	Ē	5	1110	0101	1	
W	5	7	0101	0111	E	6	1110	0110	1	
X	5	8	0101	1000	E	7	1110	0111		
Υ	5	9	0101	1001	E	8	1110	1000		
Z	5	10	0101	1010	E	9	1110	1001		
	5	111	0101	1011	4	Α	0100	1010		
	5	12	0101	1100	E	0	1110	0000	Reverse Sla	
	5	13	0101	1101	5	A	0101	1010	 	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	5	14 15	0101	1110	5 6	F D	0101 0110	1111	Logical NC Underscore	
	6.	0	0110	0000	7	9	0111	1001	Grave Acce	
a	6	i i	0110	0001	8	1 1	1000	0001	Oldve Acce	
<u>-</u> Ь	6	2	0110	0010	8	2	1000	0010		
С	6	3	0110	0011	8	3	1000	0011	1	
d	6	4	0110	0100	8	4	1000	0100		
e	6	5	0110	0101	8	5	1000	0101		
f	6	6	0110	0110	8	6	1000	0110		
9	6	7	0110	0111	8	7	1000	0111		
<u>h</u> i	6	8	0110	1000	8	8	1000	1000	 	
	6	9	0110	1001	8 9	9	1000	0001	1	
!	6	11	0110	1010	9	2	1001	1 0010	 	
i i	6	12	0110	1 1100	9	3	1001	0011	1	
m	6	13	0110	1101	9	4	1001	0100		
n	6	14	0110	1110	9	5	1001	0101		
0	6	15	0110	1111	9	6	1001	0110		
	7	0	0111	0000	9	7	1001	0111	_	
9	7	1	0111	0001	9	8	1001	1000	 	
<u>r</u>	7	2	0111	0010	9	1 9	1001	1001		
t t	7	4	0111	0100	A	2	1010	T 0010	+	
U	7	5	0111	1 0101	Â	4	1010	1 0100	†	
	7	6	0111	0110	A	5	1010	0101	 	
w	7	7	0111	0111	Ā	6	1010	0110	1	
×	7	8	0111	1000	A	7	1010	0111	†	
У	7	9	0111	1001	A	8	1010	1000		
z	7	10	0111	1010	Α	9	1010	1001		
<u> </u>	7	11	0111	1011	С	0	1100	0000	1	
	7	12	0111	1100	6	Α	0110	1010	Vertical Lin	
}	7 7	13 14	0111	1101	D A	0	1101 1010	0000	 	
~							1010		Tilde	

Figure 18. ASCII to EBCDIC Conversion (Part 2 of 2)

EBCDIC to ASCII Correspondence (X'00' to X'82')

	EBCDIC				<u> </u>				
Character	Col	Row Hex)		lit tern	Col	 Row	Bi Patt		Comment
	(in)	1ex)							
NUL	0	0	0000	0000	0	<u>i o </u>	0000	0000	1
SOH	0	1	0000	0001	0	1	0000	0001	1
STX	0	2	0000	0010	0	2	0000	0010	<u> </u>
ETX	0	3	0000	0011	10	3	0000	0011	
HT	0	5	0000	0101	0	9	0000	1001	
DEL	0	7	0000	0111	7	15	0111 0000	1111	_
VT FF	1 0	B I C	0000	1100	1 0	12	0000	1100	
CR	1 0	 	0000	1101	1 0	13	0000	1101	<u> </u>
so	1 0	T E	0000	1110	Ö	14	0000	1110	<u> </u>
SI	T ŏ	T F	0000	1111	1 0	15	0000	1111	†
DLE	1	0	0001	0000	1	0	0001	0000	1
DC1	1 1	1 1	0001	0001		1	0001	0001	
DC2] 1	2	0001	0010	1	2	0001	0010	
DC3	1	3	0001	0011	1	3	0001	0011	<u> </u>
BS		6	0001	0110	0	8	0000	1000	1
CAN	1	8	0001	1000	1 1	8	0001	1000	
EM	1	1 9	0001	1001	1 1	9	0001	1001	↓
FS	1	C	0001	1100	 	12	0001	1100	_
GS	1	D	0001	1101	 	13	0001	1101	
RS US	1 1	E	0001	1110	1 1	14	0001	1110	
LF	2	F 5	0010	0101	0	10	0000	1010	<u> </u>
ETB	2	1 6	0010	0110	1 1	1 7	0000	0111	
ESC	2	7	0010	0111	t i -	1 11	0001	1011	
ENQ	2	Ď	0010	1101	Ö	5	0000	0101	1
ACK	2	E	0010	1110	0	6	0000	0110	†
BEL	2	F	0010	1111	0	7	0000	0111	
SYN	3	2	0011	0010	1	6	0001	0110	
EOT	3	7	0011	0111	0	4	0000	0100	
DC4	3	i C	0011	1 1100	1	4	0001	0100	
NAK	3	D	0011	1101	1	5	0001	0101	1
SUB	3	I F	0011	1111	1	10	0001	1010	
ŞP	4	0	0100	0000	2	0	0010	0000	↓
	4	A	0100	1010	5	11	0101	1011	
· <	4	В	0100	1011	2	14	0010	1110 1100	
	4	C D	0100 0100	1100	3 2	12 8	0011 0010	1000	
	4 4	I E	0100	1110	2	1 11	0010	1000	
i	4	1 F	0100	t <u> </u>	2	! ';	0010	0001	Logical OR
&	5	. 0	0101	0000	2	1 6	0010	0110	1
j	5	A	0101	1010	5	13	0101	1101	1
Š	5	В	0101	1011	2	4	0010	0100	
*	5	C	0101	1100	2	10	0010	1010	
)	5	D	0101	1101	2	9	0010	1001	
<u> </u>	5	E	0101	1110	3	11	0011	1011	1
_	5	F	0101	1111	5	14	0101	1110	Logical NO
-,	6	1 0	0110	0000	2	13	0010	1 101	Hyphen, Mi
<u> </u>	6	<u> </u>	0110	0001	2	15	0010	1111	1 1/2 1/2
_ _	6	1 A	0110	1010	7 -	12	0111	1100 1100	Vertical Lin
3%	6	B	0110 0110	1011	2	12	0010 0010	0101	+
	6	C	0110	1100	5	15	0101	1111	Underscore
>	1 6	E	0110	1110	3	14	0011	1110	- CINCIAL OF
?	6	F	0110	1111	3	15	0011	1111	1
	7	1 9	0111	1001	6	1 0	0110	0000	Grave Acce
:	7	A	0111	1010	3	10	0011	1010	I
#	7	В	0111	1011	2	3	0010	0011	1
@	7	С	0111	1100	4	0	0100	0000	
•	7	D	0111	1101	2	7	0010	0111	
=	7	E	0111	1110	3	13	0011	1101	↓
		F	0111	1111	2	2	0010	0010	1
11	8	1 1	1000	0001	6		0110	0001	

Figure 19. EBCDIC to ASCII Conversion (Part 1 of 2)

EBCDIC to ASCII Correspondence (X'83' to X'F9')

	EBC	DIC	<u></u>						
Character	Col	Row Hex)		Bit ttein	Col	Col Row Bit			Comments
·		<u> </u>		T		i -		T	-
c	8	3 4	1000	011	6	3	0110	0011	†
e	8	5	1000	0100	6	5	0110	0101	
f	8	6	1000	0110	6	6	0110	0110	
9	8	7	1000	0111	6	7	0110	0111	
<u> </u>	8	8	1000	1000	6	8	0110	1000	
i	8 9	9	1000	1001	6	1 9	0110 0110	1001	-
	9	2	1001	0010	6	111	0110	1011	+
	9	3	1001	0011	6	12	0110	1100	
m	9	4	1001	0100	6	1 13	0110	1101	<u> </u>
n	9	5	1001	0101	6	14	0110 0110	11110	+
<u>о</u> Р	9	7	1001	1 0111	7	1 0	0111	1 0000	
9	9	8	1001	1000	7	! 	0111	0001	
r	9	9	1001	1001	7	2	0111	0010	
~	A	1	1010	0001	7	1 14	0111	1110	Tilde
<u>s</u>	A	2 3	1010 1010	0010	7	3 4	0111 0111	0011 0100	
t	A	4	1010	0100	7	5	0111	1 0100 1 0101	
	Â	5	1010	0101	7	6	0111	0110	
w	Α	6	1010	0110	7	7	0111	0111	
×	A	7	1010	0111	7	8	0111	1000	
<u>y</u>	A	8 9	1010 1010	1 1000	7	1 9	0111	1 1001	
<u>z</u>	† ĉ	1 0	1100	0000	7	1 11	0111	1011	
À	T c	l i	1100	0001	4	i	0100	0001	<u> </u>
В	С	2	1100	0010	4	2	0100	0010	
<u> </u>	C	3	1100	0011	4	1 3	0100	0011	↓
D E	C	4	1100	0100 0101	4	4 5	0100 0100	0100	↓
<u>E</u>	C	5	1100	1 0110	4	6	0100	0110	
G	Č	7	1100	0111	4	7	0100	0111	
Н	С	8	1100	1000	4	8	0100	1000	
	C	9	1100	1001	4	1 9	0100	1001	_
) 	D	0	1101	0000	7	13	0111 0100	l 1101 I 1010	<u> </u>
K	1 b	2	1101	0010	4	11	0100	1010	-
L	D	3	1101	0011	4	12	0100	1100	
М	D	4	1101	0100	4	13	0100	1101	ļ
N	D	5	1101	0101	4	14	0100	1110	
O P	D	6 7	1101	0110	5	15	0100 0101	0000	
<u> </u>	D	8	1101	1000	5	i	0101	0001	1
R	D	9	1101	1001	5	2	0101	0010	
	E	0	1110	0000	5	12	0101	1100	Reverse Slar
<u>S</u> T	E	3	1110 1110	0010	5	3 4	0101 0101	0100	
- ' U	E	4	1110	0100	5	5	0101	0100	†
V	E	5	1110	0101	5	6	0101	0110	
W	E	. 6	1110	0110	5	7	0101	0111	ļ
X	E	7	1110	0111	5	8	0101	1000	<u> </u>
Z	E	8	1110	1000	5	9	0101 0101	1 00 1 1010	-
0	F	0	1111	0000	3	0	0011	0000	1
1	F	ĭ	1111	0001	3	ĭ	0011	0001	1
2	F	2	1111	0010	3	2	0011	0010	
3	F	3	1111	0011	3	3	0011	0011	ļ
4	F	4 5	1111	0100	3	4	0011	0100 0101	
<u>5</u>	F	6	1111	0110	3	5	0011	0110	
7	F	. 7	1111	0111	3	7	0011	0111	
8	F	8	1111	1000	3	8	0011	1000	
9	F	9	1111	1001	3	9	0011	1001	I.

Figure 19. EBCDIC to ASCII Conversion (Part 2 of 2)

APPENDIX D: MASTER INDEX FOR VSE/ADVANCED FUNCTIONS LIOCS

This <u>Master Index</u> contains references to the VSE/Advanced Functions Logical IOCS manuals. The number(s) after each entry is the key to the manual(s) in which the information is found. The keys correspond to the following manuals.

- 1. <u>VSE/Advanced Functions LIOCS Volume 1: General Information and Imperative Macros</u>, LY24-5209.
- VSE/Advanced Functions LIOCS Volume 2: SAM , LY24-5210.
- 3. <u>YSE/Advanced Functions LIOCS Volume 3: DAM and ISAM</u>, LY24-5211.
- 4. <u>VSE/Advanced Functions LIOCS Volume 4: SAM FOR DASD</u>, LY24-5212.

```
ACB (access method control block) 1
                                               B-transients (see logical transients) 1, 2
access methods 1, 2, 3
                                                3,4
   direct 1, 3
                                               basic telecommunications access method 1
   indexed sequential 1, 3
                                                  close monitor 1
   sequential 1, 2
                                                  open monitor 1
                                               block size, logical
   telecommunications 1
                                               BSI (buffer status indicator) 2
   virtual 1
ADD function (ISAM) 3
                                               buffer
                                                   (MICR) 2
   add to overflow area 3
  channel program builder 3 end-of-file add 3
                                                  status indicator 2
                                                  truncation, 3800 printer 2
   normal add to prime data area 3
                                               buffering, double 3
   WAITF macro 3
                                               bypass checkpoint records routine, MTMOD 2
   WRITE NEWKEY macro 3
                                               byte, sync 2
add to the overflow area 3
adding records to a file 3
                                               call supervisor (SVC) capacity record (RO)
address modification subroutine 1
ADDRTR function (ISAM) 3
   channel program builder 3
                                               card device files 2
   end-of-file add 3
                                               CCW
  ESETL macro 3
                                                  chains 3
                                                  work area initialization 4
   GET macro 3
   overflow area add 3
                                               CCWs (basic), channel program builder 3
   prime data area add 3
                                                  CDMOD 2
   PUT macro 3
                                                  CWTRL macro 2
  READ KEY macro 3
                                                  GET macro 2
  SETL macro phase 1, $$ESETL 3
SETL macro phase 2, $$ESETL1 3
SETL macro phase 3, $$ESETL2 3
                                                  PUT macro 2
                                               chain reading of VTOC labels 4
                                               channel program builder 3
   WAITF macro 3
                                                  descriptor byte 3
   WRITE KEY macro 3
                                                  ISMOD ADD 3
   WRITE NEWKEY macro 3
                                                  ISMOD ADDRTR 3
                                                  ISMOD, RANDOM RETRVE 3 ISMOD, SEQNTL RETRVE 3
algorithm to calcualte upper/lower limits
 for FBA devices 4
alteration factors 3
                                                  strings 3
alternate switching 2
                                               channel programs
   EOV, tape 2
                                                  with RPS, sequential DASD 2
   system units, tape 2
                                                  without RPS, sequential DASD 2
ANSI
                                               CHECK macro 1, 2
  control codes 2
                                                  MRMOD 2
                                                  MTMOD work file 2
   tape file label 1
   tape volume label 1
                                               checkpoint 2
areas, work 3
                                                  records, bypassing MTMOD 2
ASCII
                                               CIDF 4
   conversion tables 1
                                               CKD
   standard volume label 1
                                                  DASD file, contents of 4
ASCII=YES, DTFCP macro parameter 2
                                                  logical units 4
associated files 2
                                               CLOSE macro 1
asynchronous processing 3
                                               close 1, 3, 4
                                                  DAM, input/output 3
   relative addressing extensions 3
                                                  ISAM 3
                                                  logic 3
```

```
macro (CVTOC) 44
                                                CPMOD macro 2
CLOSE
                                                DTFCP
                                                initialization and termination 2
  monitor 4
close
                                                logic module (CPMOD)
   monitor
                                                open monitor
                                             console files (DTFCN)
     functions 1
      general chart 1
                                                close 2
                                                DTFCN macro 2
      phases
     subroutines 1
                                                GET macro 2
                                                open monitor
CLOSE
   processing 4
                                                PUT macro 2
close
                                             control interval (CI)
  routines 1, 2
                                                calculating the number of
                                                definition field (CIDF) 4
      alternate switching for EOV 2
      alternate switching for system units
                                                definition of 4
                                                format
                                                logical blocks, limits of 4
      diskette 2
      DTFCP/DTFDI tape files 2
                                                PBN calculation 4
      DUMODFO 2
                                                size, determining
                                             control interval definition field (CIDF)
      EOF/EOV input forward 2
                                             control 1, 2
      FCV output forward 2
      files 1
                                                block, access method (ACB)
     IJDPR3 2
                                                cards for DASD labels
      job accounting interface 1
                                                cards for tape labels 1
                                                information 4
      magnetic tape except work files 2
                                             conventions for relative addresses
      MICR 2
      optical reader files
                                             conversion of relative addresses
     paper tape files 2
                                             converting relative block addresses 4
     printer files for 3800
                                             count-key-data (CKD) addressing 4
      punch files 2
                                             COV
                                             CPMOD macro 2
      unit record files 2
      work files 2
                                                   IOPTR=YES 2
   sequential DASD
     all files 1
                                                   one I/O area
      FEOVD specified
                                                   TRC=YES 2
      free track function 1
                                                   two I/O areas 2
                                                parameters 2
     input and output 1
   V TOC 4
                                                PUT
                                                   IOPTR=YES 2
CLOSER macro
            1, 2
                                                   one I/O area
CNTRL macro
   CDMOD 2
                                                   two I/O areas
                                             CPNOTE (DTFCP)
   DAMOD 3
                                             CPOINT (DTFCP) 4
CPOINTS (DTFCP) 4
   DAMODV
   DRMOD 2
  fixed-length records
                                             creation of tape volume labels
   MTMOD data file 2
   MTMOD work file 2
                                                open output sequential DASD 2
  ORMOD 2
                                             cross reference list
   printer files for 3800 2
                                                label 4
                                                phase name - CSECT
   PRMOD 2
   undefined records 2
                                             cross-reference label list 1, 2, 3
   variable-length records 2
                                             CVTOC 4
COBOL, input file closing 2
                                                 format of
                                             cylinder
codes, DTF type
                                                index
combined files (DTFCD)
                                                overflow area 3
command control block (CCB)
                                                overflow control record
common LIOCS routines
common VTOC handler (CVH)
   close parameter list (IJJHCPL)
                                             DAM (direct access method) 1, 3
   control path
                                                channel programs 3
                4
                                                close 3
   functions of
                                                device independent DTF extension 1
  invocation macros 4
                                                extent information 3
   open parameter list (IJJHCPL)
   processing functions
                                                logic module macros
   processing parameter list (IJJHCPL)
                                                rotational position sensing
   return codes
   services of 4
                                                channel program builder subroutine 3
   work area (IJJHCWA)
                                                CNTRL macro
commonly used logical transients 1
                                                FREE macro
compiler files 1, 2
                                                input/output macros 3
   characteristics 2
                                                macro 3
```

```
error message writer
   seek overlap subroutine 3
   WAITF macro
                                                    phase 1
                                                    phase 2 1
DAMODV 3
  channel program builder subroutine 3
                                                 file labels 1
                                                 files
   CNTRL macro 3
   FREE macro 3
                                                    close routine
   IJIGET subroutine
                                                    module save areas
   input/output macros
                                                    open routine 1
                                                    record format 2
   seek overlap subroutine 3
   WAITF macro 3
                                                    storage areas 2
                                                 files, close routine
DASD file processing 4
                                                 files, open routine 1 input files 1
DASD 1, 2, 3
   device independent functional support
   DTF dense type update open phase label
                                                 label processing
    procedures for (LBRET macro)
                                                 output files
   file protect 1, 3
                                              display VTOC
   files 1
                                              DLBL/EXTENT
      close routine
                                                 image 4
      open routine
                                                 processing
   input files 1
                                              DLINT macro 2
   label information
                                              DLIST
                                                 contents of 4
   label infromation
                                                 use of 4
   labels
                                              document information record 2
   output
   RDS common close data organization, VSAM
                                              DRMOD 2
     1
                                                 CNTRL
data areas 4
                                                 READ 2
data files 4
                                                 SETDEV
data security indicator 3
                                                 WAITF 2
                                              DSKXTNT table
   message writer
                                              DSPLY macro 1, 2
data set format, FBA
                                              DTCP 2
                                                 close tape files 2
declarative macros 1
   define the file (DTFxx)
                                                 message writer 2
                                                 open, input tape 2 open, labeled input
   interrelationship of instructions 1
   module generation (xxMOD)
                                                 open, output tape 2
delete label
                                              DTF (IJJGDTF) 4
   open output sequential DASD
   sequential DASD open output
                                              DTF extension (IJJGDTFX)
                                                 initialization
dequeue extent JIBs
dequeue for VSAM routines 1
                                              DTF tables 1, 2, 3
                                                 DT FCD 2
descriptor byte, DAM channel program
 builder 3
                                                    combined
DEVADDR=, DTFCP macro parameter 2
                                                    input 2
device independent DTF extension 1
                                                    output 2
device
                                                 DTFCN
   independent files 2
                                                 DTFCP 2
                                                    DISK= omitted 2
      initialization and termination 2
                                                    DISK=NO 2
      RPS interface 2
                                                    DISK=YES
      system files (DI)
   release transient $$BRFLSE 1
                                                 DTFDA
DFR macro 2
                                                 DTFDI
                                                        2
diagnostic' aids 4
                                                        2
                                                 DTFDR
DIB 4
                                                 DTFDU
                                                        2
DIMOD 2
                                                        3
                                                 DTFIS
   GET, one I/O area 2
                                                    ADD
   GET, two I/O areas
                                                    ADDRTR
   PUT, one I/O area 2
                                                    LOAD 3
                                                    RETRVE, RANDOM
   PUT, two I/O areas 2
direct access method (DAM)
                                                    RETRVE, SEQUIL
                           1, 3
                                                 DTFMR 2
   channel program builder strings 3
   files 3
                                                 DT FMT
   module 3
                                                    data files 2
                                                    work files 2
DISEN macro 1, 2
disk information block (DIB)
                                                 DT FOR 2
                                                 DTFPH 2,
disk
   error message writer 1
                                                    DAM
                                                    diskette 2
      phase 1
      phase 2 1
                                                    magnetic tape
   volume ID support 1
                                                    sequential disk 2
DISK=, CPMOD macro parameter 2
                                                 DTFPR
                                                        2
diskette
                                                 DTFPT
```

```
no shift 1018 2
                                                open 2
     no trans, shift, delete 1017 2
                                               table 2
     no trans, shift, delete 2671 2
                                             DTFMT 1, 2
                                                data files 2
     shift 1018 2
     trans, no shift or delete 1017
                                                message writer 2
     trans, no shift or delete 2671
                                                open 2
                                                open work files 2
     trans, shift, delete, fixunb 1017
                                                tables, data files
     trans, shift, delete, fixunb 2671
     trans, shift, delete, undef 1017 2
                                                tables, work files 2
     trans, shift, delete, undef 2671 2
                                                work file format 1
                                                work files 2
                                             DTFOR 2
  address constants 1
  extensions 3
                                                close
                                                open 2
     DTFDA 3
     DTFIS 3
                                                optical reader 2
     work area for RPS 3
                                                table 2
                                             DTFPH macro
   macros 4
                                             DTFPH 2, 3
     DTFBG
                                                diskette 2
     DTFCD
            1
     DTFCN
            1
                                                macro 2, 3, 4
                                                   DAM 3
     DTFCP
            1
            1, 3, 4
     DTFDA
                                                   diskette 2
                                                   magnetic tape 2
     DTFDI
            1
                                                   sequential disk 2
     DTFDR
            1
     DTFDU
                                                table
                                             DTFPR 2
     DTFEN
            1
     DTFIS
            1, 3
                                                printer files 2
     DTFMR
            1
                                                table
     DTFMT
            1
                                             DTFPT
                                                logic module (PTMOD)
     DTFOR
            1
                                                table
     DTFPH 1, 3, 4
     DTFPH, DAM
                                             DTFSD 2
                                                channel programs 2
     DTFPR
     DTFPT
            1
                                                data files 4
     DTFSD 1, 4
                                                macro 4
                                                macro work filess
                                                macro, data files 2
   structure, general information
   table initialization, SD open input 2
                                                SYSFIL, limitations of
                                                tables, data files
   types 1
                                                tables, work files 2
     used by $$BCLRPS 1
DTFCD 2
                                                work files 4
DTFCN 2
                                             DTFxx macros
                                                DT FCD 2
   GET macro 2
                                                DTFCN
   PUT macro
  PUTR macro
                                                DTFCP
                                                       2
                                                DTFDI
DTFCP
  CPNOTE
                                                DTFDR
  CPOINT 4
                                                      2
                                                DT FDU
  CPOINTS 4
                                                DTFMR
   error conditions 4
                                                DTFMT
                                                       2
                                                DTFOR
  logic module 4
DTFDA DTF Extension 4
                                                DTFPH (DAM)
                                                DTFPH (diskette)
DTFDA macro 3
                                                                 2
DTFDI 2
                                                DTFPH (magnetic tape)
  close tape files 2
                                                DTFPH (sequential disk) 2
                                                DTFPR
  message writer 2
  open 2
                                                DTFPT
     input tape 2
                                                DTFSD
                                             dump VTOC
     labeled input
     output tape 2
                                                DASD
  table
                                                diskette
DTFDR 2
                                             duplicate device assignment 1
  open 2
                                             dynamics device release (RELEASE macro) 1
   table 2
DTFDU
   macro
                                             ENDFL macro 1, 3
                                             enqueue for VSAM routines 1
   table 2
DTFIS macro
                                             entry/sequenced data organization 1
DTFMR 2
                                                LOAD
                                             EOF add
                                                      3
  close 2
   message writer 2
                                             EOF/EOV
                                                monitor 2
   MICR 2
```

```
FEOVD
   routines, general chart 1
                                                  macro 1, 2
EOFADDR=, DTFCP macro parameter 2
                                                  processing 4
EO V
   and logical spacing routine 2
                                              field
   limits for prime data area 3
                                                 information record 2
ERET macro 1
                                                 sequence link 3
ERREXT 2, 3
                                              file protection 4
   DUMODFI
                                              file 1, 2, 3
   DUMODFO 2
                                                 additions 3
   option 3
                                                  definition macros
                                                  initialization and termination 1
   parameter list 3
                                                 labels 1, 2
DASD 1
ERROPT 2
   DUMODFI
   DUMODFO
                                                     diskette
error conditions, DTFCP
                                                     open output sequential DASD 2
error/status indicator 3
                                                     open work file sequential DASD
error 1, 2, 3
                                                     tape
   exit routine
                                              files, associated 2
      MTMOD, fixed
                                              fixed block architecture, definition of 4
      MTMOD, variable 2
                                              fixed-length record modules 2
   message list, master 1
                                              flowchart
   message writer
                                                  labels 1, 3
                                                  symbols 1, 2, 3
      data security 1
                                              forced-end-of-volume 1, 4
      disk open phase 1
      disk open phase 2
                                              format-1 label
      diskette open phase 1
                                                  extents in 4
      diskette open phase 2 1
                                               format 3 label, extent overflow 4
                                              format-3 label 2
   messages 2
                                                  open output sequential DASD 2
   option extension 3
   options extension
                                               format 1, 2
                                                 DTFMT work file 1
   recovery, punch 2
ESETL macro 1, 3
                                                  record 2
   ADDRTR 3
                                                 record relationship 2
RETRVE, SEQNIL 3
example of the open function 1
explanation of flowchart symbols 1, 2, 3
                                              formatting macro
                                               FREE macro 1, 2, 3
                                                  DAMOD 3
                                                  DAMODV 3
extended buffering for the 3800 2
   CLOSE processing
                                                  ISMOD, RANDOM RETRVE 3
                                              free track function 2
   CNTRL macro
                                                  close sequential DASD
   OPEN processing
   PRTOV macro
                                               functions
                                                  add records to a file
   PUT macro 2
   TRC/FCB update
                                                  load or extend a file
   truncation 2
                                                 random record retrieval 3
                                                  sequential record retrieval 3
extending
   a file with ISAM 3
   information to user, DAM
                                              generation macros, module
   overlap, open output sequential DASD \, 2 \, to DTF \, 2 \,
                                                  for diskette 2
                                               GET logic for the 1017 paper tape reader 2
      open input sequential DASD 2
                                               GET macro 1, 2, 3
      open output sequential DASD
                                                  CDMOD
      open work file sequential DASD
                                                  CPMOD
                                                        2
                                                     IOPTR=YES 2
extents, console open output sequential 2
EXTRN symbol linkage 1
                                                     one I/O area
                                                     two I/O areas 2
                                                  DIMOD
factor, reconversion 3
                                                     one I/O area 2
                                                     two I/O areas 2
FBA
   block, definition of
                                                  DTFCN 2
   control interval 4
                                                  DUMODFI 2
   DAM DTF macrc support 4
                                                  example
   DASD file, contents of 4
                                                  header labels on tape, user 1
   data set format 4
                                                 ISMOD
   message writer parameter list (IJJGMPL)
                                                     ADDRTR
                                                     SEQNTL RETRVE 3
   non-system files 4
   SAM DTF macro support
                                                  MR MOD
                                                         -2
   SAM OPEN monitor parameter list
                                                  MTMOD
    (IJJGMNP) 4
                                                     fixed-length records 2
   system files 4
                                                     GET/PUT common routines 2
FCEPGOUT macro 1
                                                     spanned records 2
FEOV macro 1, 2
                                                     undefined records 2
```

```
variable-length records 2
                                                DTFCP macro parameter 2
                                             IOREG=, DTFCP macro parameter 2
   ORMOD
      blocked records 2
                                             ISAM (indexed sequential access method) 1, 3
     unblocked records 2
                                                close 3
   PTMOD 2
                                                file extension 3
     no trans 2671 2
                                                ISAM DTF device type update open phase 3
      no trans, shift, delete, 1017 2
                                                JIBs 3
      trans fixed 2671 2
                                                macro instructions 3
      trans undefined 2671 2
                                                   add records to a file 3
                                                   load or extend a DASD file 3
      trans 1017 2
GETVCE output parameter list (IJJGGCP)
                                                   random retrieval 3
                                                   sequential retrieval 3
                                                rotational positional sensing 3
handling DASD labels
                                             ISMOD macro 3
handling tape labels 1
                                             job information block (JIB)
I/O area requirements 3
                                             job
I/O areas
                                                accounting interface 1
   add (blocked records)
                                                   close monitor 1
   add (unblocked records) 3
                                                   open monitor 1
                                                control 1, 2 cards for DASD labels
   load 3
   retrieve (blocked records)
  retrieve (unblocked records) 3
                                                   cards for tape labels
                                                   magnetic tape open 2
ID, reference by (DAM)
                                                   statements for MT files 2
IDLOC 3
ignore open sequential DASD 2
IIPCLOSE 1
IIPOPEN 1
                                             key
                                                referenced by DAM 3
imperative
   macro expansions 1
                                                sequenced data organization 1
   macros 1
independent overflow area 3
index level pointer 3
                                             label processing parameter and I/O area
indexed sequential access method 1, 3
                                              table (IJJGLPTB) 4
indexes 3
   cylinder
                                                cross-reference list 4
   master 3
                                                information, DASD 3, 4
   track 3
                                                list, flowchart 1, 2, 3
indicator, error/status 3
                                                processing
information record 2
                                                   user 4
   document
                                                   VTOC 4
   field 2
                                             labels 2
   line 2
                                                DASD 1
initialization procedures 4
                                                   IBM standard volume 1
                                                   job control cards 1
initialization
   and termination 1, 2, 3
                                                   nonstandard 1
     CF and DI files 2
                                                   processing 1
     DAM 3
                                                   standard tape, file labels 1
      magnetic tape files 2
                                                   standard volume 1
                                                magnetic tape
      MICR files 2
     optical reader files 2
                                                   additional
     procedures 3
                                                   input file
      sequential DASD files 2
                                                   job control cards 1
     unit record files 2
                                                   nonstandard 1
   open sequential DASD
                                                   output file
input/output areas 4
                                                   processing 1
input/output
                                                   standard file 1
  areas for SD 2
                                             LBRET macro 1, 4
   for diskette 2
                                             length field, sequence 3
   macros
                                             line information record
     DAMOD 3
DAMOD V 3
                                             link field, sequence
                                             linkage, EXTRN
interface, job accounting 1
                                             LIOCS interrelationship, example of 1
                                             list VTOC 1
   close monitor 1
                                             LITE macro 1, 2
MRMOD 2
   open monitor
IOAREA= 2
   CPMOD macro parameter 2
                                             load FBA open 4
   DTFCP macro parameter 2
                                             LOAD function 3
IOCS 1
                                                ENDFL macro, phase 1
IOPTR=
       2
                                                ENDFL macro, phase 2 3
  CPMOD macro parameter 2
                                                SETFL macro
```

```
phase 1
                                                       $$BOCPT1
      phase 2
                3
                                                       $$BOCPT2
                                                                 2
      phase 3
                3
                                                       $$BOCPT3
                                                                  2
      phase 3A 3
                                                       $$BOCPT4
                                                                  2
      phase 4 3
                                                       $$BOCP01
                                                                  2
   WRITE NEWKEY macro 3
                                                       $$BOCP02
loading or extending a file 3
                                                       $$BOCP03
                                                                  2
logic module processing 4
                                                       $$BOCP 11
                                                                  2
logic module/SSR work area (IJGXZWA)
                                                       $$BOCP 12
                                                                  2
logic modules, channel program building 4
                                                       $$BODACL
                                                                  3
logic modules, versions of in SVA 4
                                                       $$BODARP
logic modules 2, 3, 4
                                                       $$BODARS
                                                                  3
   CDMOD
                                                       $$BODAU1
                                                                 3
   CPMOD
          2
                                                       $$BODIO1
   DAMOD
          3
                                                       $$BODIO2
                                                                  2
   DAMODV
                                                       $$BODIO3
                                                                 2
   DIMOD
          2
                                                       $$BODIO4
   DTFCN
          2
                                                       $$BODIO5
                                                                  2
   ISMOD
          3
                                                       $$BODIO6
   MRMOD
                                                       $$BODIO7
                                                                  2
   MTMOD
          2
                                                       $$BODIO8
                                                                 2
   ORMOD
          2
                                                       $$BODMSG
                                                                  1
   PRMOD
          2
                                                       $$BODMS2
                                                                  1
   PTMOD
                                                       $$BODQUE
                                                                  1
   SAM 4
                                                       $$BODSMO
logical block
                                                       $$BODS MW
   CI limits 4
                                                       $$BODS PO
   defintion of 4
                                                       $$BODSPV
   size 4
                                                       $$BODS PW
                                                                  1
logical output files 4
                                                       $$BODUCP
logical record, definition of 4
                                                       $$BOESTV
logical transients 4
                                                       $$BOFLPT
logical
                                                       $$BOIS RP
   IOCS
                                                       $$BOIS01
                                                                  3
      common routines
                                                       $$BOIS02
                                                                  3
      general information
                                                       $$BOIS 04
                                                                  3
      special purpose routines
                                                       $$BOIS05
                                                                  3
   spacing and EOV routines 2
                                                       $$BOIS 06
   transients 1, 2, 3, 4
                                                       $$BOIS07
                                                                  3
      $$BCCPTI
                                                       $$BOIS08
                                                                  3
      $$BCEOVI
                                                       $$BOIS 09
      $$BCISOA
                                                       $$BOIS10
                                                                  3
      $$BCLOSE
                                                       $$BOIS 11
                                                                  3
      $$BCLOSP
                                                       $$BOKUL1
                                                                 и
      $$BCLOS2
                                                       $$BOMRCE
                                                                 2
      $$BCLOS3
                                                       $$BOMR01
      $$BCLOS4
                                                       $$BOMSG1
      $$BCLRPS
                                                       $$BOMSG2
      $$BCMR01
                                                       $$BOMTOM
      $$BCMT01
                                                       $$BOMTOW
                                                                 2
      $$BCMT02
                                                       $$BOMT 0 1
                                                                  2
      $$BCNT03
                                                       $$BOMT02
                                                                  2
      $$BCNT04
                                                                 2
                                                       $$BOMT03
      $$BCNT05
                                                       $$BOMT04
      $$BCNT06
                 2
                                                       $$BOMT05
                                                                 2
      $$BCNT07
                                                       $$BOMT 06
                                                                  2
      $$BCNT08
                 2
                                                       $$BOMT07
      $$BENDFF
                                                       $$BONVOL
      $$BENDFL
                                                       $$BOOR01
                                                                  2
      $$BENDQB
                                                       $$BOPEN
      $$BERPTP
                                                       $$BOPENC
      $$BERRTN
                                                       $$BOPENR
      $$BIKUL1
                                                       $$BOPENS
      $$BINDEX
                                                       $$BOPEN1
      $$BJCOPT
                                                       $$BOPE N2
      $$BJCOP1
                 2
                                                       $$BOPEN4
      $$BMMR20
                                                       $$BOPIGN
      $$BMSGWR
                 2
                                                       $$BOPLBL
      $$BMSGW1
                                                       $$BOPNR2
                                                                  1
      $$BOCPM1
                                                       $$BOPNR3
      $$BOCPM2
                2
                                                       $$BOPR3
                                                                  1
      $$BOCPRP
                                                       $$BORTV1
```

```
$$BORTV2
                                                   DTFSD
      $$BOSDC1
                                                   DTFxx
                                                          1
                                                   ENDFL 1
      $$BOSDC2
      $$BOSDEV
                                                   ENDFL LOAD 3
                                                   ERET 1
      $$BOSFBL
      $$BOSVLT
                                                   ES ETL
                                                         1
      $$BOULI1
                                                      ADDRTR 3
      $$BOULO1
                                                      SEQNTL RETRVE 3
                                                   expansions, imperative 1
      $$BOUR01
                                                   FEOV 1, 2
FEOVD 1, 2, 4
      $$BOVDMO
      $$BOVDMP
      $$BOWDMO
                                                   formatting 3
                                                   FREE 1, 2, 3
DAMOD 3
      $$BOWDMP
      $$BRELSE
      $$BSEFTL
                                                      DAMODV 3
      $$BSETFF
                                                      RANDOM RETRVE 3
      $$BSETFG
                                                   GET 1, 2, 3
ADDRTR 3
      $$BSETFH
      $$BSETFI
                                                      CDMOD
      $$BSETL
                                                      CPMOD
      $$BSETL1
                3
                                                      DIMOD
                                                             2
      $$BSETL2
                3
                                                      DTFCN
                                                             2
      $$B3540I
                                                      MRMOD
      $$B35400
                2
                                                             2
                                                      MTMOD
      $$VOPENT
                                                      ORMOD
   unit block (LUB)
                                                      PTMOD 2
                                                      SEQNTL RETRVE 3
                                                   input/output
macro
                                                      DAMOD 3
                                                      DAMODV 3
   CDMOD 2
   CHECK 1, 2
                                                   instructions (ISAM)
      MRMOD 2
                                                      add records to a file 3
      MTMOD 2
                                                      load or extend a DASD file 3
      SDMODW
                                                      random retrieval 3
   CHKPT 1
                                                      sequential retrieval 3
   CLOSE 1
                                                   ISMOD 3
   CLOSER 1
                                                   LBRET
   CNTRL 1, 2, 3
                                                   LITE 1, 2
      CDMOD 2
DAMOD 3
                                                   MR MOD 2
                                                   MTMOD
      DAMODV 3
                                                   NO TE 1
      DRMOD 2
                                                      MTMOD
      IJDPR3 2
                                                   OPEN 1
                                                   OPENC 1
OPENR 1
ORMOD 2
      MTMOD 2
      ORMOD
      PRMOD
             2
                                                   POINTR 1
   CPMOD 2
   DAMOD 3
                                                      MTMOD
   DAMODV
           3
                                                   POINTS 1
   DFR 2
                                                      MTMOD
   DIMOD
                                                   POINTW 1
                                                      MTMOD
   DISEN
          1, 2
   DLINT 2
                                                   PRMOD 2
   DRMOD
                                                   PRTOV 1, 2
          2
                                                   for 3800
PTMOD 2
   DSPLY
          1, 2
   DTFCD
          2
                                                   PUT 1, 2,
   DTFCN
                                                      ADDRTR
   DTFCP
   DTFDA
                                                      CDMOD 2
   DTFDI
         2
                                                      CPMOD
   DTFDR
                                                      DIMOD
                                                      DTFCN
   DTFDU
          2
                                                      IJDPR3 2
   DTFIS
          3
   DTFMR
                                                      MTMOD
   DTFMT
          2
                                                      PRMOD
   DTFOR
          2
                                                      PTMOD
                                                             2
   DTFPH, DAM 3
                                                      SEQUIL RETRYE 3
                                                   PUTR 1, 2
   DTFPH, diskette 2
                                                   RDLNE 1, 2
READ 1, 2, 3
DRMOD 2
   DTFPH, magnetic tape 2
   DTFPH, sequential disk 2
   DTFPR 2
DTFPT 2
                                                      ID DAMOD 3
```

```
KEY ADDRTR 3
                                                EOV output forward 2
      KEY DAMOD 3
                                                files 1, 2
     KEY RANDOM RETRVE 3
                                                   close monitor functions 1
     MRMOD 2
                                                   close routine 1
     MTMOD 2
                                                   message writers
                                                   open routine 1
     ORMOD 2
                                                message writer 2
     SPNUNB records 3
     VARUNB records 3
                                                OPEN routines 2
  relationship 1
                                                open 2
   RELEASE 1
                                                   I/O nonstandard/unlabeled 2
  RELSE 1, 2
                                                   input standard labels, backward 2
     MTMOD
                                                   input standard labels, forward 2
  RESCN 1, 2
SEOV 1
                                                   job control 2
                                                   output standard labels 2
  SETDEV 1, 2
                                                   work files 2
  SETFL 1
                                                open/close subroutines 2
   LOAD 3
SETL 1, 3
                                             master
                                                error message list 1
     ADDRTR 3
                                                index, ISAM 3
      SEQUIL RETRVE 3
                                             message writer interface table (IJJGIFT)
   TRUNC 1, 2
                                             message-module relationship
   MTMOD 2
WAITF 1, 2, 3
DAMOD 3
                                             message
                                                code for disk open error
                                                cross-reference list 1, 2, 3, 4
     DAMODV 3
                                                writer 1
     DRMOD 2
                                                writers 1, 2
     ISMOD ADD 3
                                                   data security 1
                                                   disk open phase 1
      ISMOD ADDRTR
     ISMOD RANDOM RETRVE 3
                                                   disk open phase 2
                                                   diskette data security
     MRMOD 2
     ORMOD 2
                                                   diskette open phase 1
   WRITE 1, 2, 3
                                                   diskette open phase 2 1
     AFTER DAMOD 3
                                                   DTFCP/DTFDI 2
      AFTER SPNUNB records
                                                   magnetic tape 2
     AFTER VARUNB records 3
                                                   MICR 2
     ID DAMOD 3
                                             messages 1
      KEY DAMOD 3
                                                $$BOMSG1
      KEY ISMOD ADDRTR 3
                                                $$BOMSG2
                                                         1
     KEY ISMOD RANDOM RETRVE 3
                                                master error list 1
      MTMOD 2
                                             method of processing 1
     NEWKEY ISMOD ADD 3
                                             MFCM 1, 2
      NEWKEY ISMOD ADDRTR 3
                                             MFCU 1
                                             MICR 1
     NEWKEY ISMOD LOAD 3
     RZERO DAMOD 3
                                               buffer 2
     RZERO SPNUNB records
                                                close 2
     RZERO VARUNB records 3
                                                DTFMR macro 2
     SPNUNB records 3
                                                error messages 2
     VARUNB records 3
                                                files 2
macros 1
                                                initialization and termination 2
  declarative 1
                                                logic module (MRMOD) 2
   imperative 1
                                                message writer
   module generation 1
                                                MRMOD macro 2
magnetic ink character recognition (MICR)
                                                open 2
files 1, 2
                                                pocket light indicators 2
magnetic tape 2
                                             MODLOOP 1
  alternate switching for EOV 2
                                                address modification subroutine 1
  alternate switching for system units 2
                                                subroutines for open
   block/deblock subroutine
                                             modular
                                                generation macros (xxMOD) 1, 2
     all files except work 2
                                                tabular system 1
      alternate switching for EOV 2
                                             module control flow 4
      alternate switching for system units
                                             module generation macros 4
     American national standard COBOL
                                             module-data area relationship 4
      input files 2
                                             modules 1, 2, 3
     EOF backward
                                                direct access method
      FOF/EOV input forward
                                                fixed-length records
     ECV output forward 2
                                                reenterable 1, 3
                                                undefined records 2
     routines 2
      work files 2
                                                variable-length records 2
  EOF backward 2
                                                work file 2
  EOF/EOV input forward 2
                                             MRMOD 2
   EOF/FOV routines 2
                                                CHECK macro 2
```

```
OPEN
  DISEN macro
   GET macro 2
                                                flags field (IJJGOPN)
   LITE macro
                                             open
  READ macro 2
                                                function, example
                                                ignore ($$BOPIGN)
   WAITF macro 2
                                                IJDPR3 2
   bypass checkpoint record routine 2
                                             OPEN
                                                input sequential DASD 4
   CHECK work files
   CNTRL data files
   CNTRI work files
                                                ISAM RETRVE phase 1
   deblocking subroutine 2
                                                ISAM RETRVE phase 2
   EOV subroutine 2
                                                ISAM 1, 3
                                                   general chart
   error exit routine 2
   FEOV 2
                                                   phase 1
                                                   phase 10
   GET 2
   GET spanned records 2
                                                   phase 2
   GET/PUT common routines
                                                   phase 4
                                                   phase 5
                                                            3
   logical spacing routine
                                                            3
   NOTE work files 2
                                                   phase 6
   POINTR work files
                                                   phase 7
   POINTS work files
                                                   phase 7A
                                                             3
                                                   phase 8 3
   POINTW work files 2
   PUT 2
                                                   phase 9 3
                                                   RPS phase 3
  PUT spanned records 2
   read/write subroutines, fixed-length
                                                 job control, magnetic tape
                                                logic DAM, general chart 3
    records 2
   read/write subroutines, undefined
                                                logic ISAM, general chart 3
    records
                                             OPEN
   read/write subroutines, variable-length
                                                macro 1
                                             open
    records 2
                                                magnetic tape files
multiple track search 3
                                                magnetic tape 1, 2
                                                    general chart
non-SYSFIL
                                                   input standard label, backward
  logic modules
                                                   input standard label, forward 2
                                                   output standard label 2
   logical units
non-system files
                                                monitor 1
nonstandard tape labels
                                                   $$BOPEN1 phase
normal add to prime data area 3
                                                   $$BOPEN2 phase 2
NOTE macro 1, 2
                                                   card device files
NOTE
                                                   compiler files
   MTMOD work files 2
                                                   console files
                                                   DAM files
                                                   example 1
OMR/RCE format open routines 2
                                                   general chart
                                                                  1
open VTOC (OVTOC) macro 4
                                                   ISAM files
OPEN/CLCSE and problem program save area
                                                   job accounting interface
 (IJJGSVEA) 4
                                                   magnetic tape files 1
                                                   MICR files
OPEN/CLOSE general modules/routines
   B-transients 4
                                                   optical reader files 1
   control path flow
                                                   phases 1
   functional flow 4
                                                   routines
                                                   sample OPEN DTFMT macro instruction
   message writer modules/routine 4
   monitor, functions of 4
                                                   self-relocating programs (OPENR)
open/close logic 2, 3
                                                   telecommunications files 1
   DAM 3
                                                   unit record files
                                                OMR/RCE routines
   ISAM
        3
OPEN/CLOSE sequential DASD files 4
                                                optical reader files
OPEN/CLOSE transient SVA PLIST (IJJGOCTS)
                                            OPEN
OPEN/CLCSE/FEOVD processing 4
                                                output sequential DASD
open 1, 2, 3
                                             open
                                                printer files 2
   console files 2
                                                printer files for 3800
   DAM 1, 3
                                                   extended buffering 2
      general chart
      user labels 3
                                                   preliminary processing 2
   device independent files 2
                                                punch files 2
  device independent files, RPS interface
                                                reader files 2
   diskette files
                                                routines
                                                sequential DASD
   DTFCP/DTFDI 2
                                                    dequeue extent JIBs 1
      input tape 2
      labeled input file 2
                                             OPEN
                                                storage management 4
      output tape 2
```

```
PRTOV macro 2
  work file sequential DASD 4
                                                PUT macro
open
                                             process VTOC (PVTOC) macro 4
   unit record files 2
                                             processing
   work files 2
OPENC macro duplicate device assignment 1
                                                asynchronous 3
OPENing sequential DASD files 4
                                                methods 1
opening the VTOC 4
                                             program organization 4
OPENR macro DTF address constants
                                             protect DASD files 1
optical reader (CR and DR) files 1, 2
                                             PRTOV macro 1, 2
                                                IJDPR3 2
   close monitor 1
   DRMOD macro
                                             PTMOD 2
                                                GET macro
   DTFDR macro
                                                PUT macro
   DTFOR macro 2
   initialization/termination 2
                                             punch/feed/read (PFR) files 2
   logic module (DRMOD)
                                             punch 2
   logic module (ORMOD) open routine 1
                                                error recovery
                                                file close 2
   organization, VSAM data 1
                                                file open 2
                                             PUT logic for the 1018 paper tape punch 2
   ORMOD macro 2
ORMOD 2
                                             PUT macro 1, 2, 3
   CNTRL macro
                                                CPMOD
                                                   IOPTR=YES 2
   DSPLY macro 2
                                                   one I/O area 2
   GET macro blocked records
   GET macro unblocked records 2
                                                   two I/O areas
                                                DIMOD one I/O area 2
   RDLNE macro 2
                                                DIMOD two I/O areas 2
   READ macro 2
                                                DTFCN 2
   RESCN macro
   WAITF macro
                                                DUMODFI
output, DASD 4
                                                DU MODFO 2
overflow area 3
                                                IJDPR3 2
   cylinder 3 ISMOD ADD 3
                                                ISMOD ADDRTR
                                                ISMOD SEQUIL RETRVE 3
   upper limits 3
                                                MTMOD
                                                      2
                                                MTMOD spanned records 2
overlap, check for (COV) 4
OVTOC, format of 4
                                                PR MOD 2
                                                PRMOD with STL 2
                                                PTMOD no shift 1018
                                                PTMOD shift 1018 2
PAGEIN macro 1
                                             PUTR macro 1, 2
paper tape 1, 2
   files, close monitor 1
                                             PVTOC, format of
   punch error recovery
                                             PWAIT
parameter list, ERREXT 3
                                                IJGXSDF
PDTABB, MICR 2
                                                IJGXSDSF 4
PFR (punch/feed/read) files 2
                                                IJGXSDV 4
phase-name - CSECT cross-reference list 4
physical block numbers (PBN)
physical IOCS 2
                                             RCE open routines 2
                                             RDF/CIDF reference overlay (IJGXZRDF) 4
   magnetic tape (DTFPH)
   sequential dasd (DTFPH) 2
                                             RDLNE macro 1, 2
PIOCS/IIOCS interrelationship 1
                                             RDONLY 3
                                             RDONLY=
pointer
                                                CPMOD macro parameter
   DTFPR macro
   DTFPR table
                                                DTFCP macro parameter
   extended buffering for 3800 2
                                             read cylinder index into storage 3
                                             read format 3 label (IJJGVD10)
   files 2
   logic module 2
                                             READ macro 1, 2, 3
   open 2
                                                DRMOD 2
   PRMOD macro 2
                                                ID DAMOD
   STL (selective tape lister) 2
                                                KEY DAMOD 3
POINTR macro 1, 2
                                                KEY ISMOD ADDRTR 3
   MTMOD work files 2
                                                KEY ISMOD RANDOM RETRVE 3
POINTS macro 1, 2
                                                MR MOD 2
   MTMOD work files 2
                                                MTMOD work file 2
POINTW macro 1, 2
                                                ORMOD
   MTMOD work files
                                                SPNUNB records 3
prime data area EOV limits 3
                                                VARUNB records
printer files 1, 2
                                             READ work files 2
                                             read/write subroutines 2
   close monitor 1
   open monitor 1
                                                fixed-length records
                                                undefined records 2
printer 2
PRMOD 2
                                                variable length records 2
   CNTRL macro 2
                                              reader file open 2
```

```
DASD OPEN/CLOSE/FEOVD logic44
reading VTOC labels 4
reconversion factor 3
                                                 logic modules 4
record definition field (RDF)
                                                 OPEN monitor parameter list (IJJGMNP)
                                                 OPEN/CLOSE processing
record 1, 2, 3
   document information
                                                 service routine (SSR)
   field information 2
                                              save areas
   format 2
                                              save areas
   ID returned (IDLOC)
                                                 DUMODFI
                                                          2
                                                 DUMODFO module 2
   line information 2
   relationship of format 2
                                              scratch VTOC label
   spanned 3
   types 3
                                              SDMOD FEOVD macro 2
   zero (RO)
             3
                                              search multiple tracks 3
RECSIZE=, CPMOD macro parameter 2
                                              seek overlap subroutines 3
reenterable modules 1, 3
                                              selective tape lister (STL)
reference
                                              SEOF 4
   by ID (DAM)
                                              SEOV macro 1
   by KEY (DAM) 3
                                              sequence link field 3
   methods and addressing systems 3
                                                 entries 3
register usage 4
                                                 index level pointer format
relative block addresses, converting of 4
                                              sequential access DASD files
relative
                                              sequential access method (SAM) 1, 2
   address conversion 3
                                              sequential DASD
   addressing conventions 3
                                                 channel programs 2
                                                 close 2
files 2, 1
RELEASE macro 1
relocate DTF address constants 1
RELPAG macro 1
                                                    close monitor 1
RELSE macro 1, 2
                                                    open monitor 1
   MTMOD
                                                 files, opening and closing of 4
RELSE 2
                                                 open general flow 2
   translate subroutine
                                                 open/close logic
      fixed-length records 2
                                              sequential processing 1
                                              SETDEV macro 1, 2
      undefined records 2
      variable-length records 2
                                              SETFL macro
   TRUNC 2
                                                 LOAD 1, 3
   work area subroutine
                                              SETL macro
   WRITE work files 2
                                                 ISMOD ADDRTR 1, 3
                                                 IS MOD SEQUEL RETRVE 1, 3
rename VTOC label 4
requirements
                                              shared virtual area (SVA)
   for I/O areas 3
                                              software end-of-file (SEOF)
storage 1
RESCN macro 1, 2
                                              spanned records 4
                                                 control field
RETRVE functions random (ISAM)
                                                 READ macro 3
                                                 WRITE AFTER macro
   channel program builder 3
   FREE macro 3
                                                 WRITE macro 3
   READ KEY macro
                                                 WRITE RZERO macro 3
   WAITF macro 3
                                              special purpose routines for LIOCS 1
   WRITE KEY macro 3
                                              split cylinder extents
RETRVE functions sequential (ISAM) 3
                                              standard
   channel program builder 3
                                                 label processing
   ESETL macro 3
                                                 tape file labels
   GET macro 3 PUT macro 3
                                              STL control fields 2
                                              storage areas 3, 4
   SETL macro ($$BSETL)
                                              storage areas
   SETL macro ($$BSETL1) 3
RETRVE open (ISAM)
                                                    input/output areas 2
  phase 1 3 phase 2 3
                                                    module save areas 2
                                                 I/O areas 3
RETRY=, CPMOD macro parameter 2
                                                 work areas 3
returned record ID (IDLOC) 3
                                              storage requirements 1
rotational positional sensing (RPS)
                                              strings, channel program builder 3
RPS
                                              subroutine
   DTF extension work area 22
                                                 address modification 1
   indicators 4
                                                 close monitor 1
   phase loading
                                                 DAMOD
   SVA initialization
                                                    channel program builder 3
                                                    seek overlap 3
                                                 DAMODV 3
                                                    channel program builder 3
IJIGET 3
SAM (sequential access method) 1, 2
   control path
                                                    seek overlap 3
   DASD files 4
                                                 MODLOOP 1
```

```
MT block/deblock 2
                                              type code, DTF
                                              TYPEFLE=
                                                        2
  MT open/close 2
  MTMOD 2
                                                 CPMOD macro parameter
      EOV
                                                 DTFCP macro parameter
      read/write fixed-length records
                                              types of records
      read/write undefined records 2
      read/write variable-length records
                                              undefined record modules for SD 2
      translate fixed-length records 2
      translate undefined records 2
                                              UNIT RECORD FILES 1, 2
      translate variable-length records work area 2
                                                  CLOSE MONITOR
                                                 CLOSE ROUTINE
                                                                 1
supervisor SYSFIL routine, function of 4
                                                 OPEN MONITOR 1
support, TES 1
                                                  OPEN ROUTINE 1
                                              unlabeled MT file option 2
SVA to LTA bridge 4
SVCs
                                              unlabeled tape files
                                              upper/lower limits for FBA devices,
switching, alternate
symbols, flowchart 1, 2, 3
                                               algorithm to calculate
                                              user label parameter list (IJJGULTB)
sync byte 2
SYSFIL
                                              user label processor
  logic modules 4 logical units 4
                                                  for input files 4
                                              for output files user labels 1, 2
system files, device independent 2
system files
                                                  magnetic tape 1
   SYSIPT
   SYSLST
   SYSPCH
          4
                                              variable-length record modules for SD 2
          4
                                              VARUNB records
   SYSRDR
                                                  READ macro 3
                                                  WRITE after macro 3
                                                  WRITE macro 3
table
   DSKXTNT 3
                                                  WRITE RZERO macro
   PDTABB for MICR 2
                                              version 3 DTF (IJGVER3)
                                              virtual storage access method (VSAM)
tabular modular system 1
                                              virtual transients (logical transient
   linkage 1
tape error statistics 1
                                                extension running in virtual)
                                                  $$ VOPENT
tape labels procedure (LBRET macro)
  tape volume labels, creation of 1
                                              volume descriptor list (IJJHDLST) 4
                                                  contents of 4
                                              volume label 1, 2
   input file
                                               volume labels DASD/diskette 1
   output file
tapemarks
                                               VSAM (virtual storage access method) 1
telecommunications access methods 1
                                                  data organization 1
                                                  display phase 1 display phase 2
termination procedures 3, 4
termination 1, 3
   file 1
                                                  display phase 3 (diskette)
   of DAM 3
                                                  dump
                                                  dump (diskette)
   procedures 3, 4
                                                  list
   processor
                                                  list (diskette)
                                              VSE/BTAM 1
   support 1
                                               VTOC
top
                                                  closing of 4
track
  hold function 1
                                                  label processing 4
                                                  opening of 4
   index 3
                                                  reading labels of
   search, multiple
trademarks, placement of 2
                                                 rename label in 4
                                                  scratch label 4
trailer labels or tape, user 1
                                                  writing labels to 4
translate subroutine MTMOD 2
translation, paper tape files
TRC (table reference character)
                                               WAITF macro
   CPMOD 2
                                                            1, 2, 3
   DTFCP - DISK=NO 2
                                                  DA MOD
   DTFCP - DISK=YES 2
                                                  DA MODV
   DTFCP - omitted 2
DTFDI 2
                                                  DRMOD
                                                  ISMOD
   DTFPR 2
                                                  ISMOD
   PRMOD - PUT macro 2
                                                  ISMOD
TRUNC macro 2
                                                  ISMOD
                                                         3
  MTMOD 2
                                                  MRMOD
truncation
                                                  OR MOD
   IJDPR3 2
                                               work area subroutine for MTMOD 2
   3800 buffer
                                               work areas 3
```

Licensed Program - Property of IBM

work file format, DTFMT 1 work file module 2 work file, defining a 4 WRITE AFTER macro 3 DAMOD 3 SPNUNB records 3 VARUNB records 3 WRITE ID macro 3 DAMOD 3 WRITE KEY macro 3 DAMOD 3 ISMOD ADDRTR 3 ISMOD RANDOM RETRVE 3 WRITE macro 1, 2, 3 writing VTOC labels 4

MTMOD work files 2 SPNUNB records 3 VARUNB records 3 WRITE NEWKEY macro ISMOD 3 ISMOD 3 ISMOD 3 ISMOD 3 write requests, types of 4 WRITE RZERO macro 3 DA MOD 3 SPNUNB records 3 VARUNB records 3

DAM (direct access method) 10

INDEX

<u>VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference: LIOCS Volume 1, LY24-5209,</u> contains a master index to LIOCS Volumes 1, 2, 3, and 4.

```
ACB (access method control block)
                                                DAM device independent extension
access methods
                                                  work area 60
  direct 10
  indexed sequential 10
                                                DASD
                                                   file protect 60 input files 46
  sequential 10
  telecommunications 11
                                                   label procedure (for LBRET Macro) 27
  virtual 11
additional file labels 44
                                                   label processing
address modification subroutine 56
                                                   labels 43
ASCII conversion tables 164
                                                   output files 47
                                                 DASD files
                                                   close routine 43
                                                   open routine 43
B-transients (see logical transients)
                                                 DASD RPS common close '59
basic telecommunications access method 11
                                                 data organization, VSAM 11
                                                 data security message writers 66,68
  close monitor 58
  open monitor 50
                                                 detail chart 140,146 declarative macros 12, 9
BTAM-ES 11
                                                   define the file (DTFxx)
                                                                             12
                                                   interrelationship of instructions 16
                                                 module generation (xxMOD) 15 dequeue extent JIBs 61
CCB (command control block) 16
                                                 dequeue extent JIBs, detail chart
check duplicate device assignments
                                                 dequeue for VSE/VSAM routines 55
 for logical units 55
                                                 dequeue for VSE/VSAM routines,
CHECK macro 19
                                                  detail chart 99
CLOSE macro 20
close monitor functions
                                                 device independent DTF extension
close monitor
                                                  work area 60
                                                 device release transient
  general chart 75
  phase 1 ($$BCLOSE) 57
                                                   $$BRELSE 61
                                                   $$BRELSE, detail chart 125
  phase 1, detail chart
                          105
  phase 2 ($$BCLOS2) 58
                                                 direct access method (DAM)
  phase 2, detail chart phase 3 ($$BCLOS3) 58
                                                 DISEN macro 23
                                                 disk error message writer
  phase 3, detail chart phase 4 ($$BCLOS4) 59
                                                   phase 1 67
                                                   phase 1, detail chart 137
                       59
                                                   phase 2 68
phase 2, detail chart 138
  phase 4, detail chart 113
  subroutines, detail chart
close routines
                                                 diskette
  files 43
                                                   file labels 47
close sequential DASD
                                                   files, close routine 43
  FEOVD 61
                                                   files, open routine 43 input files 47
  free track function 60
  free track function, detail chart 122
                                                   label processing 47
  input and output 60
                                                   open input, general chart 77
  input and output, detail chart 120
                                                   open output, general chart 78
CLOSER macro 21
CNTRL macro 22
                                                   output files 47
                                                 diskette error message writer
                                                   phase 1 64
codes, DTF type
                 14
command control block (CCB)
                                                   phase 1, detail chart 143
common LIOCS routines 49
                                                   phase 2 65
commonly used logical transients 61
                                                   phase 2, detail chart 144
compiler file, open monitor 50 console file, open monitor 50
                                                 diskette files
                                                   close routine 43
control block, access method (ACB)
                                                   label processing
                                      13
control statements for DASD labels
                                                   open routine 43
control cards for tape labels 45
                                                 display VTOC 62
creation of tape volume labels 44
                                                 DSPLY macro 23
cross-reference label list 152
                                                 DTF address constants 55
                                                   detail chart 93
```

DTF macros	GET macro, example 41
DTFBG 13	
DTFCD 12	
DTFCN 12	1 3 1-1-1 t
DTFCP 12 DTFDA 12	header labels on tape, user 44
DTFDI 12	
DTFDR 13	
DTFDU 13	IIPCLOSE 59
DTFEN 13	IIPOPEN 43,52
DTFIS 13	imperative macro expansions 19
DTFMR 13	imperative macros 16,9
DTFMT 13	indexed sequential access method (ISAM) 10
DTFOR 13 DTFPH 13	initialization and termination 42 interface, job accounting 53
DTFPR 13	interface, job accounting 53 IOCS 9
DTFPT 13	ISAM (indexed sequential access method) 10
DTFSD 13	ISAM Open, general chart 74
DTFSR 13	
DTF structure, general information 12	
DTF types 14	
DTF types used by \$\$BCLRPS 60	job accounting interface 53
DTFMT work file format 56	job control cards for DASD labels 46
dump VTOC DASD 66	for DASD labels 46 for tape labels 45
diskette 63	TOT cape labels 45
duplicate device assignment 55	
detail chart 97	
dynamic device release (RELEASE macro) 35	key-sequenced data organization 11
	•
ENDFL macro 23	label list, flowchart 152
enqueue for VSAM routines 55	labels, DASD
entry-sequenced data organization 11	job control cards 46
EOF/EOV routine, general chart 76	processing 45-47
ERET macro 24	standard tape file labels 44
error message list, master 155	labels, magnetic tape additional 44
error message writer data security 66,68	additional 44 input file 45
disk open phase 1 67	iob control cards 45
disk open phase 2 68	nonstandard 45
diskette open phase 1 64	output file 45
diskette open phase 2 65	processing 45
ESETL macro 24	standard file 44
example of the open function 54	LBRET macro 26
explanation of flowchart symbols 70 EXTRN symbol linkage 15	DASD and tape labels procedure 27
EXIRM SYMBOL LINKAGE 15	linkage, EXTRN 15 LIOCS master index 168
	LIOCS/PIOCS interrelationship,
	example of 10
FEOV macro 24	list VTOC, diskette 63
FEOVD macro 25	LITE macro 28
file	logical IOCS
definition macros 12	functions of 9
initialization and termination 42 labeling 43	processing methods 10 logical transients
labels for DASD 43	\$\$BCLLBL 59
labels for diskette 43	detail chart 108
flowchart labels 152	\$\$BCLOSE 57
flowchart symbols 70	detail chart 105
forced end of volume 61	\$\$BCLOS 2 58
forced end of volume, detail chart 126	detail chart 109
format of DTFMT work file 56	\$\$BCLOS3 58
FREE macro 25 free track function 60	detail chart 112 \$\$BCLOS4 59
close sequential DASD 60	detail chart 113
close sequential DASD, detail chart 122	\$\$BCLRPS 59
•	detail chart 115
	\$\$BENDQB 55
	detail chart 99
GET macro 26	\$\$BODMSG 64

```
detail chart
                                                 CNTRL
                                                         22
  $$BODMS2 65
                                                 DISEN
                                                         23
    detail chart
                  144
                                                 DSPLY
                                                        23
  $$BODQUE
           61
                                                 DTFxx
                                                         12
    detail chart
                  124
                                                 ENDFL
                                                         23
  $$BODSMO 66
                                                 ERET 24
    detail chart
                  146
                                                 ESETL
  $$BODSMW
          68
                                                 FEOV
                                                       24
    detail chart
                                                 FEO VD
                                                        25
  $$BODSPO
          63
                                                 FREE 25
                                                 GET 26
    detail chart
  $$BODSPV 62
                                                 LBRET
    detail chart
                  131
                                                 LITE 28
  $$BODSPW
           63
                                                 NOTE 28
    detail chart
                                                 OPEN
                                                       29
  $$BOESTV 49
                                                 OPENC
                                                 OPENR 30
    detail chart
  $$BOFLPT 61
                                                 POINTR 31
    detail chart
                  128
                                                 POI NTS
                                                         31
  $$BOMSG1 67
                                                 POINTW
                                                         31
    detail chart
                  137
                                                 PRTOV 32
  $$BOMSG2 68
                                                 PUT 32
    detail chart
                  138
                                                 PUTR 33
  $$BOPEN 49
                                                 RDL NE 34
    detail chart
                                                 READ 34
                  80
  $$BOPENC
            55
                                                 RELEASE
    detail chart
                                                 RELSE
                                                        36
  $$BOPENR 55
                                                 RESCN 36
    detail chart
                                                 SEOV 36
  $$BOPENS 57
                                                 SETDEV
                                                          37
    detail chart
                  117
                                                 SETFL 37
  $$BOPEN1
            50
                                                 SETL 38
                                                 TRUNC
    detail chart
                                                        38
  $$BOPEN2 51
                                                         39
                                                 WAITF
    detail chart
                                                 WRITE
                                                       39
  $$BOPEN4
           51
                                               macro expansions, imperative 19
    detail chart
                                               macro relationship 16
  $$BOPIGN 51
                                               macros
    detail chart
                                                 declarative 12
  $$BOPLBL 53
                                                 imperative 16-19
    detail chart
                                                 module generation
                                                                    15
                                               magnetic ink character recognition (MICR)
  $$BOPNR2
           56
    detail chart
                                                files 42
  $$BOPNR3 56
                                               magnetic tape files
    detail chart
                                                 close monitor functions 58
  $$BOSDC1 60
                                                 close routine 43
    detail chart
                  120
                                                 open routine 42
  $$BOSDC2
           60
                                               magnetic tape open, general chart
    detail chart
                  122
                                               master error message list 155
  $$BOSDEV
                                               master index, LIOCS manuals 168
           61
                                               message code for disk open error
    detail chart
  $$BOVDMO 63
                                                message writer
                                                                68
                                               message writers
    detail chart
  $$BOVDMP 66
                                                 $$BOMSG1
                                                           67
    detail chart
                  134
                                                 $$BOMSG2 68
  $$BOWDMO 64
                                                 data security 66,68
    detail chart
                  151
                                                 data security, detail chart 140,146
  $$BOWDMP
           66
                                                 disk open phase 1 67
                                                 disk open phase 1, detail chart 137 disk open phase 2 68
    detail chart
                  136
  $$BRELSE 61
                                                 disk open phase 2, detail routine 138
    detail chart
                  125
  $$VOPENT 57
                                                 diskette data security 66
    detail chart 118
                                                 diskette data security, detail chart
                                                 diskette open phase 1 64 diskette open phase 1, detail chart
logical unit blocks (LUBs)
LUBs 62
                                                 diskette open phase 2 65
                                                 diskette open phase 2, detail chart
                                                 master error list 155
macro
                                               method of processing 10
        19
  CHECK
                                               MICR 42,43
  CLOSE
       20
                                               MOD macros
  CLOSER 21
                                               MODLOOP
```

address modification subroutine 56 RDLNE macro 34 READ macro 34 subroutines for open 102 modular tabular system 12 reenterable modules 15 relative-record data organization 11 module generation macros (xxMOD) 12,15 modules, reenterable 15 RELEASE macro 35 relocate DTF address constants 55 detail charts 93 phase 2 56 nonstandard tape labels 45 phase 3 56 NOTE macro 28 RELSE macro 36 requirements, storage 12 RESCN macro 36 RPS DTF extension work area 60 open diskette RPS phase loading 57 RPS SVA initialization 57 input, general chart 77 output, general chart 78 open function, example 54 open ignore (\$\$BOPIGN) 51 open ignore, detail chart 88 SAM (sequential access method) open ISAM, general chart 74 SEOV macro 36 OPEN macro 29 sequential access method (SAM) open magnetic tape, general chart 70 sequential DASD files close monitor 57 open monitor 50 open monitor \$\$BOPEN1 phase 1 50 detail chart 81 sequential processing 10 SETDEV macro 37 SETFL macro 37 SETL macro 38 \$\$BOPEN2 phase 2 51 detail chart 90 compiler files 50 console files 50 general chart 71 special purpose routines for LIOCS 49 standard tape file labels 44 standard tape label processing ISAM files 51 magnetic tape files 42,50 input file 45 MICR files 42,50 output file 45 optical reader files 42,50 storage requirements 11 routines 49 subroutine sample OPEN DTFMT macro instruction address modification 56 self-relocating programs (OPENR) 55 close monitor 114 MODLOOP 56,102 telecommunications files 50 support, TES 49 symbols, flowchart 70 unit record files 42,50 open routines 42 open sequential DASD dequeue extent JIBs 61 dequeue extent JIBs, detail chart 124 OPENC macro 29 tabular modular system 12 duplicate device assignment 55 linkage 16 duplicate device assignment, detail tape chart 97 input file 45 OPENR macro 30 output file 45 DTF address constants 55 tape error statistics (see TES) DTF address constants, detail chart 93 tape labels procedure (LBRET macro) tape volume labels, creation of 44 optical reader files close monitor 58 open routine 42 tapemarks 44 telecommunications access methods 11 organization, VSAM data 11 termination, file 42 TES processor 49 detail chart 141 TES support 49 track hold function 15 paper tape files, close monitor 58 PIOCS/LIOCS interrelationship, trailer labels on tape, user 44 example of 10 TRUNC macro 38 POINTR macro 31 type code, DTF 14 POINTS macro 31
POINTW macro 31 printer files close monitor 58 unit record files close monitor 58 processing methods 10 PRTOV macro 32 close routines 43 PUT macro 32 open monitor 49 PUTR macro 33 open routines 42

unlabeled tape files 46 user labels, header and trailer on tape virtual storage access method (VSAM) virtual transient (logical transient extension running in virtual) \$\$VOPENT 5**7** \$\$VOPENT, detail chart 118 VSAM (virtual storage access method) data organization 11 VTOC display phase 1 62 display phase 1, detail chart display phase 2 63 display phase 2, detail chart 132 display phase 3 (diskette) 63 display phase 3, detail chart dump 66

dump, detail chart 134
dump (diskette) 63
dump (diskette), detail chart 150
list 66
list, detail chart 136
list (diskette) 64
list (diskette), detail chart 151
VTOC
volume dump 66
volume list 66
VTOC diskette
dump 63
list 64

WAITF macro 39
work file format, DTFMT 56
WRITE macro 39



International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
1133 Westchester Avenue, White Plains, N.Y. 10604

IBM World Trade Americas/Far East Corporation
Town of Mount Pleasant, Route 9, North Tarrytown, N.Y., U.S.A. 10591

Please use pressure sensitive or other gummed tape to seal this form. Staples can cause problems with automated mail sorting equipment.

Note:

VSE/Advanced Functions Diagnosis Reference: LIOCS Volume 1 General Information and Imperative Macros

This manual is part of a library that serves as a reference source for systems analysts, programmers, and operators of IBM systems. This form may be used to communicate your views about this publication. They will be sent to the author's department for whatever review and action, if any, is deemed appropriate. Comments may be written in your own language; use of English is not required.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation whatever. You may, of course, continue to use the information you supply. Copies of IBM publications are not stocked at the location to which this form is addressed. Please direct any requests for copies of publications, or for assistance in using your IBM system, to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality. Possible topics for comment are:

Clarity	Accuracy	Completeness	Organization	Coding	Retrieval	Legibility
If you wi	sh a reply, give	your name and ma	iling address:			

What is your occupation?	
	4 + 1 +
Number of latest Newsletter associated with this publication:	-

Thank you for your cooperation. No postage stamp necessary if mailed in the U.S.A. (Elsewhere, an IBM office or representative will be happy to forward your comments or you may mail directly to the address in the Edition Notice on the back of the title page.)

VSE/Advanced Functions: LIOCS Volume 1 (File No. S370/4300-30) Printed in U.S.A.

Reader's Comment Form

Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape



BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS

PERMIT NO. 40

ARMONK, N.Y.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE:

International Business Machines Corporation Department 812 BP 1133 Westchester Avenue White Plains, New York 10604 NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES



Fold and tape

Please Do Not Staple

Fold and tape



International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
1133 Westchester Avenue, White Plains, N.Y. 10604

IBM World Trade Americas/Far East Corporation
Town of Mount Pleasant, Route 9, North Tarrytown, N.Y., U.S.A. 10591

IBM World Trade Europe/Middle East/Africa Corporation 360 Hamilton Avenue, White Plains, N.Y., U.S.A. 10601